

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z



The Ultimate
Driving Machine®



OWNER'S MANUAL.





WELCOME TO BMW i.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW i.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW i. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW i. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW i.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the vehicle literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

! NOTES

Information	6
Safety of the high-voltage system	15
Owner's Manual media	17

🔑 QUICK REFERENCE

Entering	20
Set-up and use	24
On the road	28

👇 CONTROLS

Dashboard	36
Sensors of the vehicle	41
Operating condition of the vehicle	45
iDrive	48
BMW Remote Software Upgrade	62
Personal settings	66
Connections	71
Opening and closing	80
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel	105
Transporting children safely	116
Driving	121
Displays	138
Lights	160
Safety	169
Driving stability control systems	201
Driver assistance systems	205
Parking	225
Driving comfort	249
Climate control	252

Interior equipment	262
Storage compartments	270
Cargo area	273

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving	280
Increasing range	285

MOBILITY

Charging the vehicle	290
Wheels and tires	301
Hood	326
Operating materials	327
Maintenance	329
Replacing components	331
Breakdown Assistance	335
Vehicle Care	342

REFERENCE

Technical data	348
Appendix	350
Everything from A to Z	352

© 2021 Bayerische Motoren Werke

Aktiengesellschaft

Munich, Germany

Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.

US English ID8 X/21, -

Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and will be available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and will be available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide web shows all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and will be available in the future, for specific models. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
>...<	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
>...<<	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

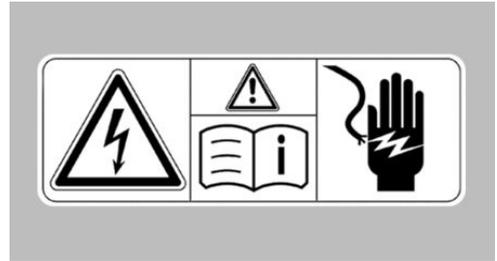
Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle components

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.



The symbols on parts of the vehicle indicate that incorrect use of high-voltage equipment or of orange-colored high-voltage components results in the risk of life-threatening injury from electric shock.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all models and all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and that will be available in the future, for specific models. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- ▷ Selected optional equipment
- ▷ National-market version or national-market equipment
- ▷ Options for later release and software update

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Verify before starting a journey whether a described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, can be obtained from a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- ▶ Owner's Manual.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▶ Technical vehicle data.
- ▶ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▶ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other repro-

ductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your

country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- ▶ BMW maintenance system.
Maintenance, refer to page 329.
- ▶ Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- ▶ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain your vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units

are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- ▶ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- ▶ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transmission into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Chassis and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is trans-

ferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent.

It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▶ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▶ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▶ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▶ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving condi-

tions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Under the hood

The engraved vehicle identification number can be found under the hood on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

The hood must only be opened by a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Right nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free

Safety of the high-voltage system

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Working on the vehicle

General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that no changes be made to the vehicle, for instance installation of retrofitting accessories, that will have an effect on the vehicle's high-voltage system.

Safety information

Warning

Improperly performed work, in particular maintenance and repair on the high-voltage system, can lead to electric shock. There is a risk of injury, fire and danger to life.

Have work on the vehicle, in particular maintenance and repair, performed by an authorized BMW i dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Contact with water

The high-voltage system is typically safe even in the following example situations:

- ▶ Water in the floor area, for instance after a rainstorm when the window was kept open.
- ▶ The vehicle is in water up to the allowed height.
- ▶ Fluid escapes in the cargo area.

Monitoring of the high-voltage battery

Principle

The temperature in the high-voltage battery is monitored.

An unusually high temperature in the high-voltage battery is indicated.

Safety information

Warning

An unusually high temperature of the high-voltage battery can cause a formation of gas and smoke. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. In case of noticeable unusual odor or smoke formation, refer to the notes for actions in the event of a message.

High temperature message

While driving

A Check Control message is displayed.

During and shortly after the charging process

Depending on the national-market version: the vehicle sounds the horn and, if applicable, the vehicle lighting is blinking.

Actions in the event of a message

While driving

1. Stop immediately.
2. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
3. Exit the vehicle.
4. Establish and keep a sufficient distance to the vehicle.
5. Alert emergency personnel.

During and shortly after the charging process

1. If necessary, exit the vehicle.
2. Establish and keep a sufficient distance to the vehicle.
3. Alert emergency personnel.

Automatic deactivation

If an accident occurs, the high-voltage system is switched off automatically to prevent risk of danger to occupants and other road users.

Additional information:

What to do after an accident, refer to page [338](#).

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual shows all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and will be available in the future, for specific models.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all serial, national-market and optional equipment that is currently available, and will be available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Select a context help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "Help"

Select a context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Entering

Opening and closing

Vehicle key



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode, pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

 Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Locking with the vehicle key

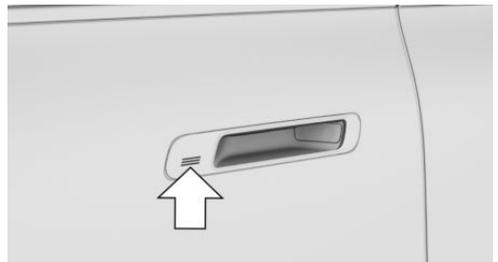
1. Close the driver's door.
2.  Press the button on the vehicle key. All vehicle access points are locked.

Unlocking on the external door handle



If you are carrying the vehicle key on your person, reach into the recessed grip.

Locking on the external door handle



If you are carrying the remote control on your person, touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without reaching into the recessed grip.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking the vehicle



Press the button with the front doors closed.

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button.

Opening the door



Press the button.

The door is unlocked and slightly open.

Push the door outward.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

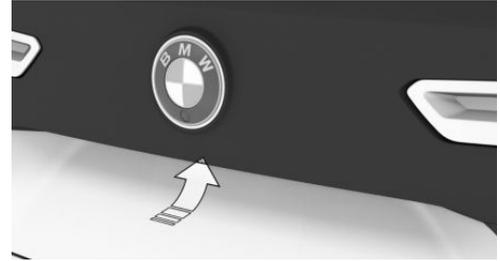


- ▶ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▶ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the cargo area.
- ▶  Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing the cargo area



Press the button on the inside of the cargo area.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person.

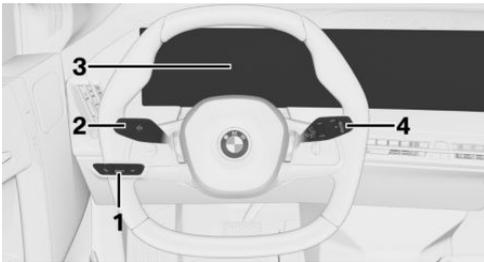
1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. With

this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



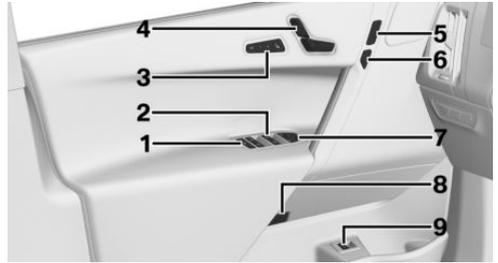
- 1 Light switch element
- 2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
- 3 Instrument cluster
- 4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

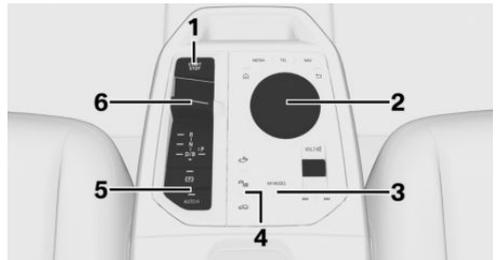
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Driver's door



- 1 Safety switch
- 2 Power windows
- 3 Seating comfort features
- 4 Seat setting
- 5 Central locking system
- 6 Opening the door
- 7 Exterior mirror adjustment button
- 8 Door emergency unlocking
- 9 Cargo area

Switch console



- 1 Start/Stop button
- 2 Controller
- 3 My Modes
- 4 Assistance systems
- 5 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
- 6 Selector lever

iDrive

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Media menu.
	Opens the Phone menu.
	Go to Navigation menu.
	Go to previous display range.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the command.

Ending voice control

-  Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Adjusting the seat



- 1 Seat settings menu
- 2 Backrest tilt
- 3 Height/longitudinal direction
- 4 Seat tilt

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

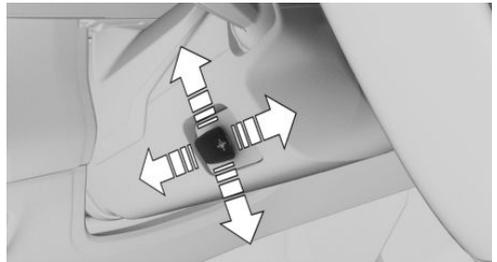


Icon	Meaning
	Folding in and out.
	Adjusting.

Icon	Meaning
	Select left mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right mirror.



Adjusting the steering wheel



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: height of the Head-up display.

Overview



The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.

-  Press the button. The LED lights up.
- Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Go to Settings

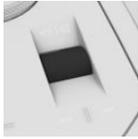
Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Entertainment

Buttons and functions

Depending on the country and equipment version, the following buttons are installed in the center console.

Button	Function
	Turning the thumbwheel: adjusts the volume. Pressing the thumbwheel: turns sound output on/off.
	Change the entertainment source.
	Press once: changes the station/track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.
	

Navigation destination input

- "NAV"
- "Where to?"
- To enter a new destination or start guidance, tap on the search box or select entry from the search history.
- Enter at least two characters.
If necessary, start search for point of interest categories from the points of interest menu.
If necessary, accept the suggested search keywords.
- A list of the results is displayed.
- Select the desired entry.

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

- "MENU"
- "All apps"

3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"
Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:
"Use Bluetooth"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

 "Accept"



- ▷ Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster:
"Accept"

Dialing a number

1. "TEL"
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5.  Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Apple CarPlay® preparation

Principle

CarPlay allows select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"
Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone on the control display or select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. Select CarPlay as the connection mode:
"Use Apple CarPlay"
8. Confirm the connection mode on the display of the smartphone.

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Android Auto® preparation

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Principle

Android Auto allows select functions of a compatible smartphone to be operated via Google Assistant voice control and via iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible Android smartphone: Samsung or Google smartphone with Android 10 or an Android smartphone with Android 11, regardless of the manufacturer.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- ▶ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- ▶ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.
- ▶ The smartphone must support a 5 Ghz WiFi connection.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"
Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone on the control display or the Bluetooth® name of the vehicle on the display of the mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. Select Android Auto as the connection mode:
"Use Android Auto"
8. Confirm the connection mode on the display of the smartphone.

On the road

Driving

Drive readiness

General information

Activated drive-ready state is the equivalent of a running engine in conventional vehicles.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Close the driver's door.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

A signal tone sounds. Drive-ready state is switched on.

Display in the instrument cluster



The READY display indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving.

Turning off drive-ready state

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Apply brake and engage the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

Drive-ready state in detail

Functional requirements

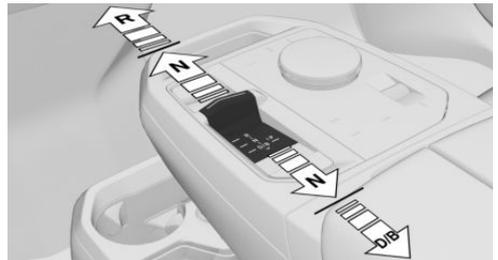
Driving is possible under the following conditions:

- ▶ The state of high-voltage battery charge is sufficient.
- ▶ The driver's door is closed.
- ▶ Charging cable is detached.

Driving

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Engage gear lever position D, B or R.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal to drive.

Engaging selector lever position R, N, D, B



- ▶ R is reverse.
- ▶ Neutral N.
- ▶ Gear position D.
- ▶ B gear position.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a

resistance point, if needed. The selector lever always returns to the center position.

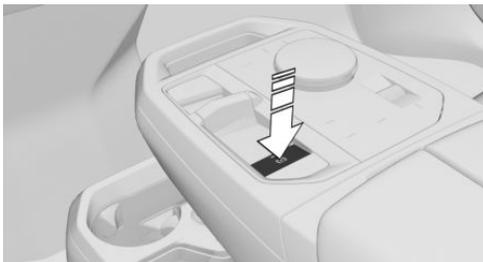
Before shifting out of selector lever position P, remove the charging cable from the vehicle; otherwise, the gearshift request will not be executed.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position B is a gear position with a high energy recovery. In selector lever position B, the vehicle will decelerate more than in selector lever position D when coasting.

Changing between selector lever position D and B: pull selector lever to D/B.

Engaging selector lever position P



(P) Press the button.

The transmission lock is engaged and the parking brake is engaged.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

(P) Press the button.
The LED on the button and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

The parking brake is engaged and transmission lock is engaged.

Releasing the parking brake

(P) Press button with selector lever position P and activated drive-ready state.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

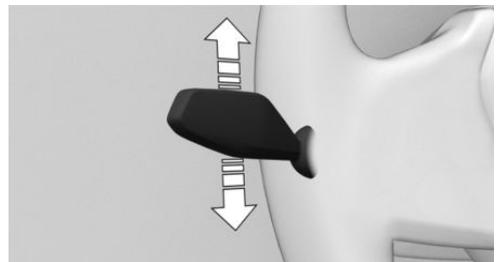
The parking brake is released.

Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- ▶ Blinking: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▶ Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▶ Brief blinking: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to blink.

High beams, headlight flasher



Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▶ High beams on, arrow 1.
The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▶ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

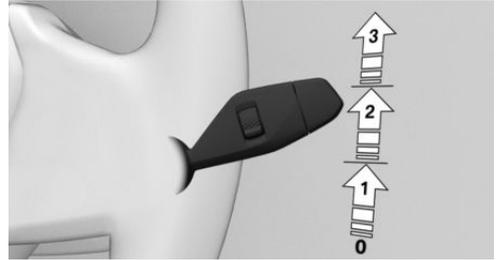
Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Automatic headlight control.
	Low beams.
	Lights off.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
	Automatic headlight control.
	Low beams.
	Parking lights.
	Lights off.
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Wiper system

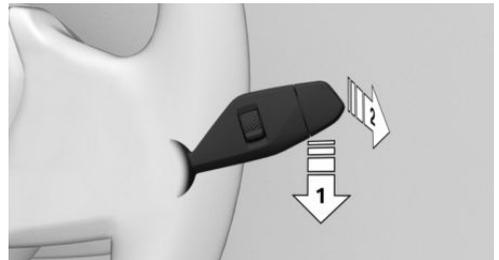
Turn on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▶ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Turn off the window wiper system and flick wipe

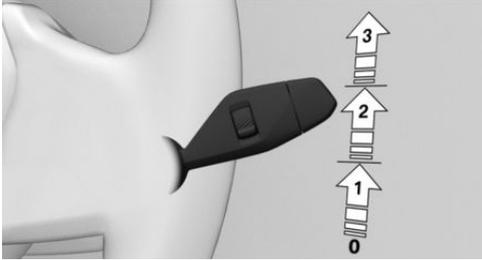


Press the lever down or forward.

- ▶ Turning off: press the lever down, arrow 1, until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▶ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position, arrow 1, as well as pushing lever in position 0 or position 1 forward, arrow 2.

The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

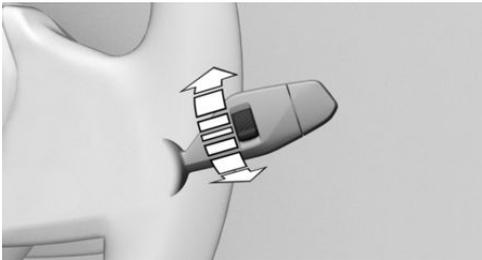
Activate/deactivate rain sensor



Activate: press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

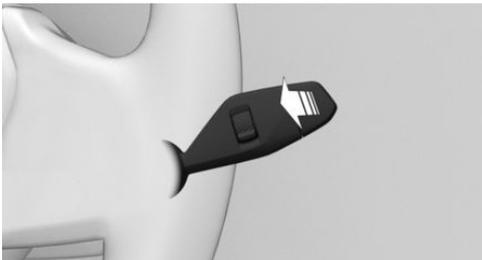
Deactivate: press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

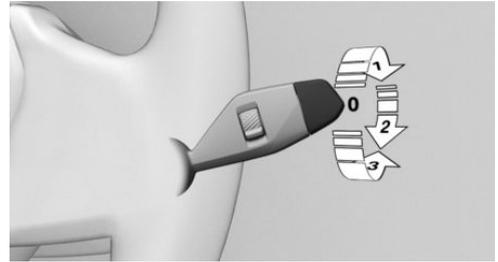
Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear window wiper



Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

Climate control

Climate control functions

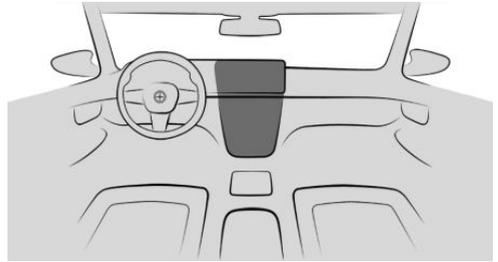
Functions via Climate control menu

Icon	Function
AUTO	AUTO program.
72.0°F	Temperature.

Icon	Function
	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	SYNC program.
	Panel heating.
	Seat and armrest heating.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Steering wheel heating

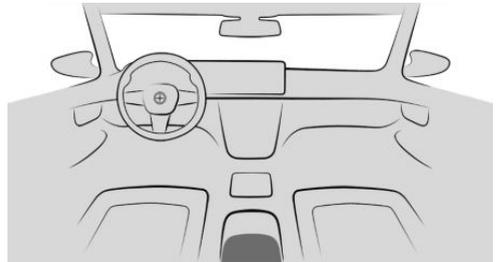
The functions can also be operated via voice, such as Temperature.

Buttons, automatic climate control



Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear automatic climate control



Icon	Function
	AUTO program.
	Temperature.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air flow.

Icon	Function
	Air distribution.
	Seat and armrest heating. Panel heating.
	Active seat ventilation.

Intermediate stop

Charging the vehicle

Depending on national-market version, use a mode 2 charging cable, fast charging cable (mode 3), or the permanently installed cable of a charging station to charge the vehicle.

The charging cable can be stowed in the cargo area, for instance under the cargo floor panel or in a bag.

Before disconnecting and connecting a charging cable, clean the area between the charging connector socket and charging socket and the charging cable plug as necessary, for instance remove snow.

If necessary, unlock the charging cable before removing.

The charging status is indicated on the indicator light on the charging socket.

Keep the charging socket cover closed when the charging socket is not used.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▶ At least twice a month.
- ▶ Before embarking on an extended trip.

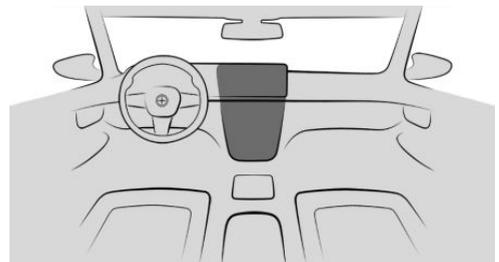
Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system

Button in the vehicle



Hazard warning system button

Breakdown Assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the entry for BMW Roadside Assistance.
A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, filling stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Your dealer's service center.

Dashboard

Vehicle equipment and options

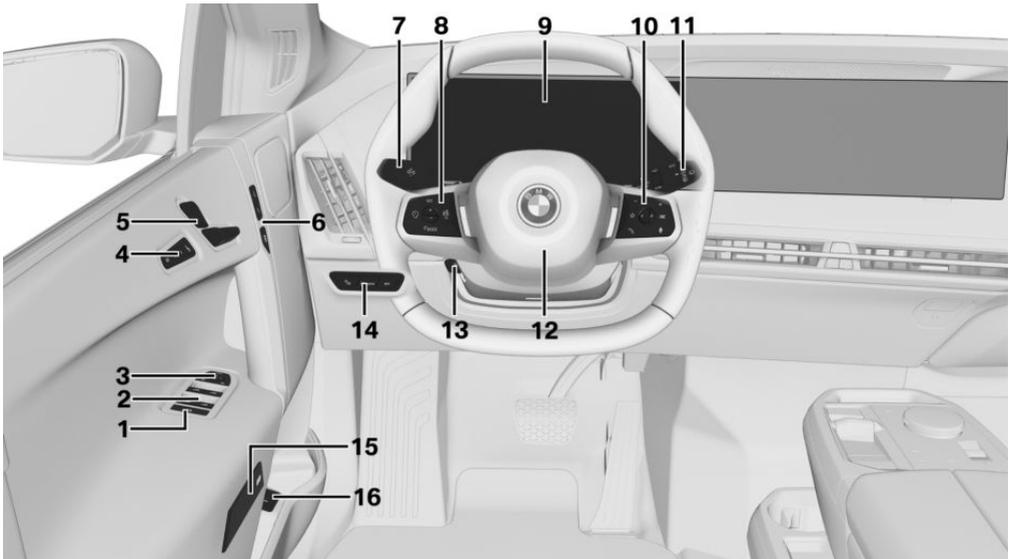
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available

now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



- 1  Safety switch [103](#)
- 2  Power windows [101](#)
- 3 Exterior mirror adjustment button [111](#)
- 4 Seating comfort features
 -  Memory function [113](#)
 -  Seat settings menu [105](#)

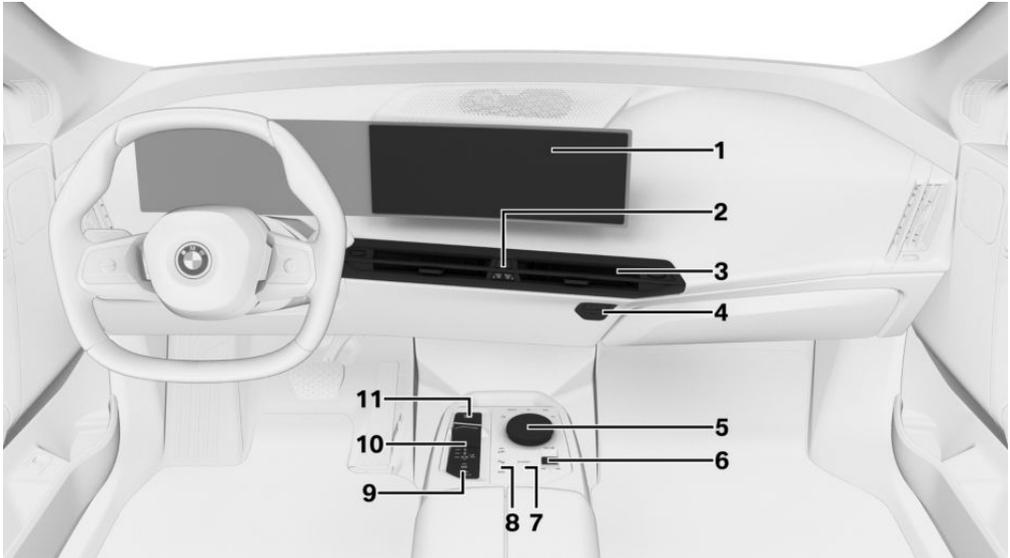
- 5 Seat setting [105](#)
- 6 Buttons for central locking system [95](#)
 -  Unlocking
 -  Locking
 -  Opening the door
- 7 Pitman arm, left

Turn signal [133](#)High beams, headlight flasher [134](#)**8** Steering wheel buttons, leftTurn speed control systems on/off [205](#)Select speed control system [205](#)Store speed [205](#)Set speed [205](#)**9** Instrument cluster [138](#)**10** Steering wheel buttons, rightSettings, instrument cluster [138](#)Settings, Head-up display [157](#)Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)Voice control, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)Thumbwheel for selecting configuration menus for instrument cluster and Head-up display [138](#)Thumbwheel for selection lists [153](#)**11** Pitman arm, rightWipers [134](#)Rain sensor [135](#)Cleaning the windshield [136](#)Rear wiper in Canadian models [136](#)Rear wiper [136](#)Clean the rear window [136](#)**12** Horn, entire surface**13** Adjusting the steering wheel [112](#)**14** LightsExterior lighting menu [160](#)Automatic High Beam Assistant [164](#)Driving lights automatic [160](#)Low beams [161](#)Adaptive lighting functions [163](#)Lights off [161](#)

15  Door emergency unlocking 95

16  Opening and closing cargo area 88

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 51

2  Hazard warning system 335

Climate control 252

 Defrost function 257

 Rear window defroster 258

3 Ventilation 258

4 Button for glove compartment 270

5 Controller with buttons 53

6 Operating elements for entertainment system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

 Adjusting the volume

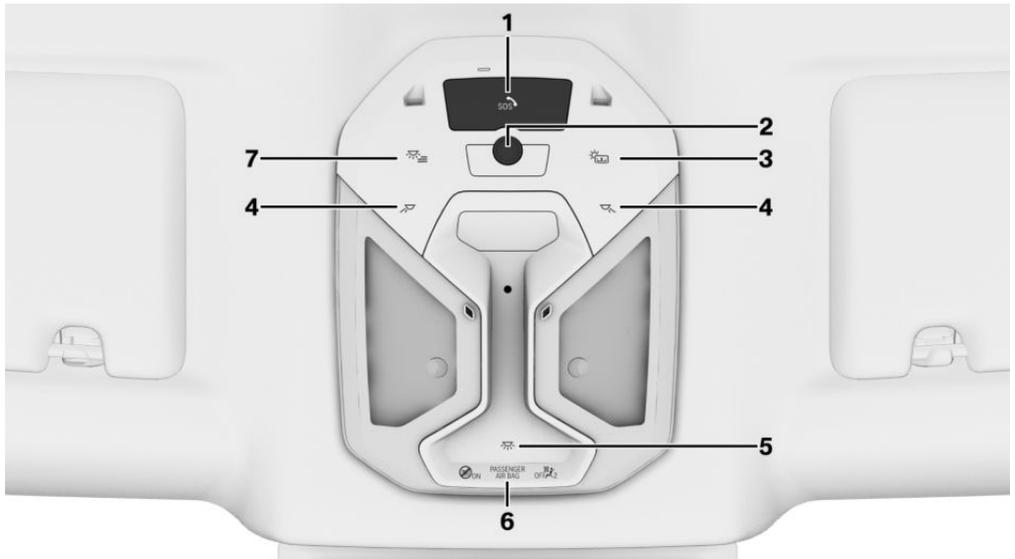
 Station/title forward

 Station/title back

7  My Modes 129

- 8**  Parking assistance systems [225](#)
-  Vehicle settings menu [51](#)
-  Two-axle ride level control [249](#)
- 9**  Automatic Hold [132](#)
-  Parking brake [130](#)
- 10** Selector lever [123](#)
- 11**  Turning drive readiness on/off [123](#)

In the vicinity of the headliner



- 1**  Emergency Call, SOS [337](#)
- 2** Interior camera [267](#)
- 3**  Glass sunroof [103](#)
- 4**  Reading lights [167](#)
- 5**  Interior lights [166](#)

6  Indicator light, front passenger air-bag [172](#)

7  Interior lighting menu [166](#)

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

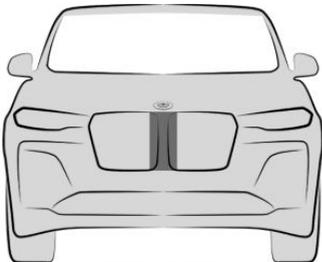
Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Top view cameras.
- ▶ Rearview camera.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▶ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

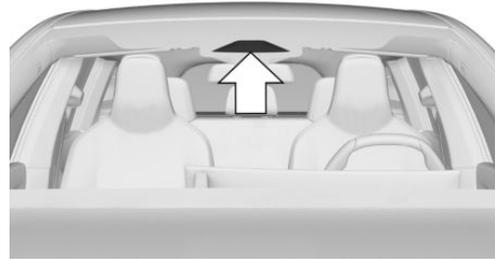
Cameras

Front camera



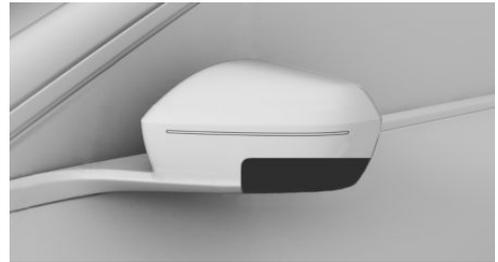
The front camera is in the area shown.

Camera behind the windshield



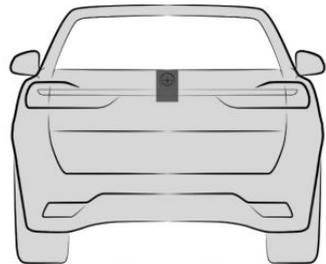
The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera



The camera is located in the emblem on the rear end.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 342.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the cameras

The function of the cameras can be limited or may indicate something wrong, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- ▷ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ With open doors or open cargo area.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.
- ▷ The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



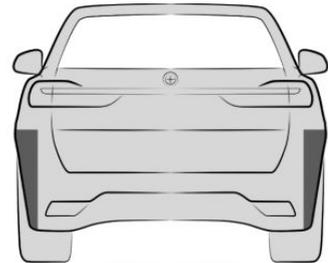
The radar sensor is located in the area shown.

Radar sensors, side, front



The radar sensors are located in the areas shown.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located in the areas shown.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▶ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 342.
- ▶ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the radar sensors

The function of the radar sensors can be limited or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In case of dirty sensors.
- ▶ In case of iced up sensors.
- ▶ If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- ▶ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▶ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- ▶ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- ▶ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▶ On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

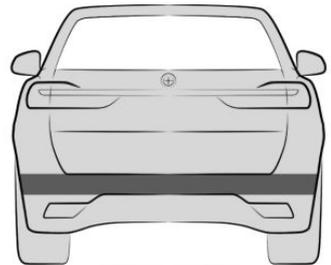
Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



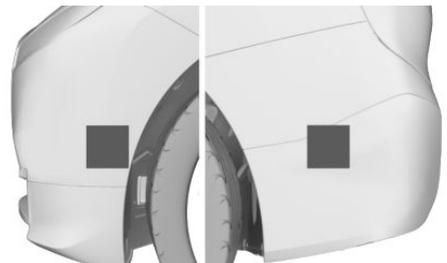
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the area shown.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the area shown.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located on the side of the vehicle in the area shown.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▶ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 342.
- ▶ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▶ In case of dirty sensors.
- ▶ In case of covered sensors, such as due to labels.
- ▶ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▶ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▶ For small children and animals.
- ▶ For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- ▶ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▶ In case of external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▶ Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▶ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▶ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▶ With moving objects.
- ▶ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▶ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

- ▶ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▶ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▶ With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- ▶ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- ▶ With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▶ With plants and bushes.
- ▶ In automatic car washes.
- ▶ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▶ Due to heavy exhaust.
- ▶ Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Operating condition of the vehicle

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Establishing the sleep mode automatically

The sleep mode is established automatically, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

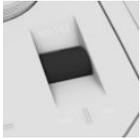
Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Standby mode when doors opened"

Establishing the sleep mode manually

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:



Press and hold the thumbwheel in the center console until the OFF indicator in the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

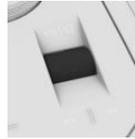
To preserve the vehicle battery, use standby and the activated power consumers only as long as absolutely necessary.

Standby, manual

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via thumbwheel



Press thumbwheel in the center console. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Via start/stop button



Press the Start/Stop button. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive readiness

General information



Drive-ready state is turned on or off with the Start/Stop button.

Activated drive-ready state is the equivalent of a running engine in conventional vehicles.

Deactivated drive-ready state is equivalent to switching the engine off.

READY

If the drive-ready state is turned on, the vehicle ready to drive and READY is displayed in the instrument cluster.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

To preserve the vehicle battery, switch off drive readiness and any unnecessary power consumers when parked.

Safety information

Warning

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other road users might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not switch standby state off in car washes.

Turning on drive readiness

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster and a signal tone sounds.

Drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning off drive-ready state

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Apply brake and engage the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

The drive-ready state is switched off automatically if the driver's seat belt is not buckled when the driver's door is opened.

iDrive

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

General information

These functions can be operated as follows:

- ▷ Via the Controller.
- ▷ Via the touchscreen.
- ▷ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Via buttons on the steering wheel.
Instrument cluster, refer to page 138.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: with the gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the

systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Main menu

Overview



Menu

 Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter for "All apps" and "Vehicle apps" can be selected. In the area "All apps", all apps and functions are displayed. In the area "Vehicle apps", only functions for vehicle settings are filtered. The last selected filter is stored. If necessary, change to the area "All apps" to display all apps and functions.

Media

 Access to functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Telephone

 Access to the telephone and message function as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

 Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map

views and other functions, such as points of interest.

Apple CarPlay

▶ With connected function: access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

Android Auto

▲ With connected function: access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content such as the navigation map. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Signal strength.
	SIM card missing.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	USB audio.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Smartphone audio.

Icon	Meaning
	Connected Music.
	Time shift.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Status information for notifications

Icon	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Suppress private information.
	Do not disturb.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Destination guidance active.
	Quick link.
	Wireless charging active.

Input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller, the touchpad, touchscreen or voice control.

Icon	Function
	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
	Enter a blank space.
	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
	Confirm entry.
	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.

Quick access

The quick link provides access to shortcuts, certain settings, and app recommendations.

Input	Operation
Show	Swipe from top to bottom on the quick link. Tip the Controller up.
Hide quick link.	Swipe from the bottom up on the control display. Tilt the Controller down.

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Shortcuts

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Storing a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Executing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

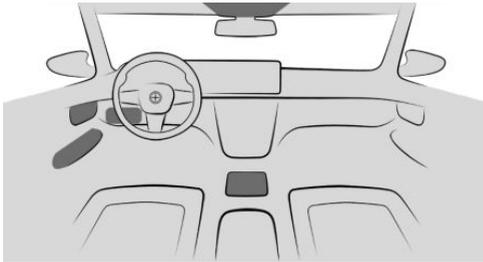
Direct access

General information

The vehicle has buttons that can be used to access menus for the respective function directly on the control display. Then continue the operation via iDrive.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Button	Function
	Vehicle settings menu.
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Interior lighting menu.
	Seat settings menu.

Control Display

Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Overview



Control Display

Automatic on/off

The Control Display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Manual on/off

The Control Display can be turned off manually.

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

Setting the brightness

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Make the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Overview



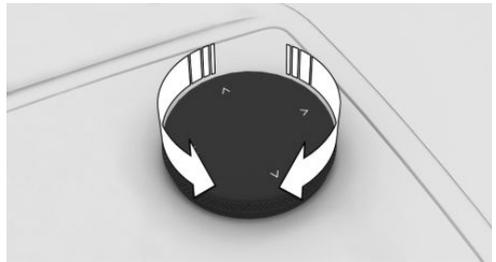
Controller

Buttons on the Controller

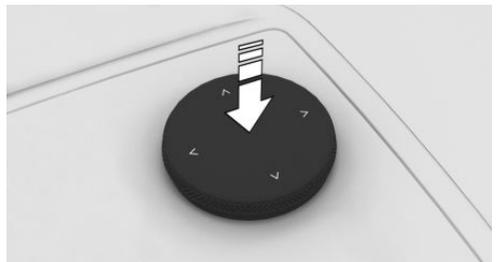
Button	Function
	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Media menu.
	Opens the Phone menu.
	Go to Navigation menu.
	Go to previous display range.

Operation

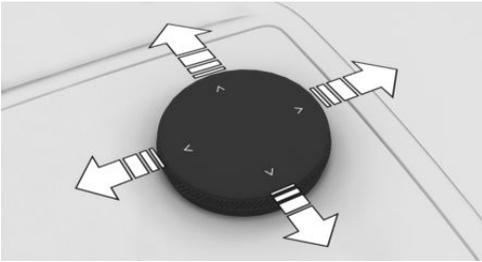
- ▶ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



- ▶ Press to select a menu item, for example.



- ▶ Tilt in four directions to change between display ranges, for example.



Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu



Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

Changing between display range

After a menu item has been selected, e.g., "System settings", a new display range will be displayed.

- ▶ Tilt the Controller to the left.
The current display area closes and the previous display range is shown.



- ▶ Press the button.

The previous display range re-opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. **OK** : confirm entry.

Setting the system language, refer to page 58.

Deleting

Icon	Function
	Press Controller: delete a letter or number.
	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▶ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▶ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▶ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Setting the system language, refer to page 58.

Entering special characters

Function	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad. Tap the map on the control display and then continue the operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

🏠 Tap on the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary, 🏠 tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. Make the desired adjustment:
 - ▶ + Tap on the icon.
A new widget can be selected.
 - ▶ ✕ Tap on the icon.
The widget is deleted.
 - ▶ Press and hold the widget and drag to the left or right.
The widget is moved to the desired position.

Go to Context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▶ "Help": go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▶ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Tap the  icon or touchscreen as necessary.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Icon	Function
	Tap icon: delete a letter or a number.
	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.
A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant simplifies the operation of the vehicle with the automation of processes and habits.

General information

- ▶ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▶ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▶ Say commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve the speech recognition.
- ▶ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▶ ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- ▶ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.
Setting the system language, refer to page 58.
- ▶ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▶ Online speech processing, refer to page 58.
- ▶ For all settings under
Data protection, refer to page 66.
- ▶ Activation word, refer to page 56.
- ▶ BMW ID or a driver profile.
- ▶ Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:



- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- ▶ Speaking the activation word.
The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Button on the steering wheel



1. Press button briefly.
2. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Saying the activation word will start the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Personal Assistant"
5. "Wake word"
6. ""Hello BMW""

Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition. An addition, such as ›Hello‹ is not necessary.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Personal Assistant"
5. "Wake word"
6. "Personal wake word"
7. "Set"
8. "Start recording"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on national-market version, some third-party providers offer digital voice assistants, e.g., Siri, Amazon Alexa, or Google Assistant.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle. In addition to the preset or personal activation word, the activation word from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Third-party providers"
5. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control



- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ▶ ›Cancel‹
- ▶ Tilt the Controller to the right or left.
- ▶ Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Say list entries as shown.

Instructions can be issued or questions can be asked where the Personal Assistant provides support.

Vehicle status and vehicle functions

- ▶ ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹
- ▶ ›Show me the sport displays.‹
- ▶ ›Open Owner's Manual.‹

Navigation

- ▶ ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey.‹
- ▶ ›Take me home.‹
- ▶ ›Are there any traffic messages?‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, calls can be started or SMS can be sent.

- ▶ ›Call John Doe on cell phone.‹
- ▶ ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 7.‹
- ▶ ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there.‹

Entertainment

- ▶ ›What song is this?‹
- ▶ ›Play Blue Suede Shoes by Elvis Presley.‹
- ▶ ›Next title.‹

Climate control

- ▶ ›Turn off the air conditioning.‹
- ▶ ›Activate fresh air.‹
- ▶ ›I'm cold.‹

Windows and light

- ▶ ›Open [the] windows automatically.‹
- ▶ ›Activate the automatic headlight control.‹

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides does not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated?‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

Menu items

Say the commands of the menu items as they are selected via the control display.

1. Activating the voice control system.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Help for voice control

- ▶ ›Voice commands‹: have possible example commands suggested.
- ▶ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ▶ ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.
- ▶ Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Settings

Setting the system language

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use standard dialog or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Personal Assistant"
5. "Response length"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Personal Assistant"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online voice processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is

transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Personal Assistant"
5. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.



1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.



2. Press the button on the steering wheel to cancel the voice control of the smartphone.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic opening of windows in the same place. Rules are created for this pur-

pose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

System limits

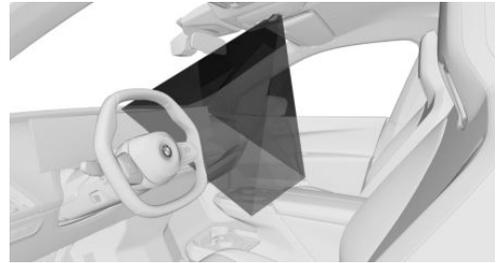
- ▶ The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.
This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.
- ▶ Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- ▶ Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- ▶ Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- ▶ A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

BMW Gesture Control

Principle

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the headliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

The camera of the gesture control uses an invisible Class 1 laser.

Activate/deactivate gesture control

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Settings

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▶ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▶ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▶ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move extended index finger forward and backward in the direction of the control display.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice control. Confirm pop-up.
	Swipe the hand in front of the control display in the direction of the passenger seat.	Reject call. Close pop-up. End voice control.
	Move extended index finger slowly in a clockwise circular movement. Gesture is detected after one circular movement.	Increase the volume.
	Move the extended index finger counter-clockwise in a circular movement. Gesture is detected after one circular movement.	Reduce the volume.
	Bring thumb and index finger together and move the hand to the right or left.	Parking view: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous title is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next title is played.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	With the index and middle fingers extended, point into the direction of the control display.	Perform individually assignable gesture.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Perform individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Two gestures can be assigned individually and can be configured as shortcut for certain functions, such as:

- ▶ Destination guidance to home address.
- ▶ Mute/Playback
- ▶ Control Display on/off

Gesture shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Configure gesture shortcut

The desired function can be selected directly in every menu and configured as shortcut.

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "Add to gesture shortcuts"
3. Select the desired gesture.

Select function

Some defined functions can be selected directly in the menu for gesture control.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Gesture control"

5. "Point two fingers at display" or "Show five-of-five fingers"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the headliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- ▶ The camera lens is covered.
- ▶ Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- ▶ The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens. Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page [344](#).
- ▶ The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- ▶ Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- ▶ Smoking in the car's interior.
- ▶ When taking a snapshot with the interior camera.

Interior camera, refer to page [267](#).

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ A consent for the transmission of the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

Search for an upgrade

Standby must be turned on to search for a software upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. The download does not require an approval.

Via BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

The data can then be transmitted from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
 - ▷ iOS: connect Bluetooth audio and WLAN.
 - ▷ Android: connect Bluetooth® audio and WLAN.

The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, refer to page 71.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates that are included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been completed successfully, the information about the new version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version:
"Installed version:"
▷ Display new available version:
"Information on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal:
www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General information

- ▷ The installation of the upgrade may result in a deletion of software changes such as performance increases that have not been installed by the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation may take around 20 to 30 minutes.
- ▷ The installation cannot be terminated.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- ▷ The vehicle can be exited during the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.
- ▷ Charging the vehicle is interrupted due to the installation.
- ▷ Following the successful installation, charging the vehicle may not continue automatically.

Prerequisites for the installation

- ▷ The state of charge of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ▷ Outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Hazard warning system is turned off.
- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Drive readiness is turned off.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met, such as a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after charging the battery for a longer period of time.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- ▷ Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- ▷ Close the windows.
- ▷ Close the trunk.
- ▷ Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- ▷ Switch off the exterior lighting.
- ▷ Remove connected devices from the OBD socket.

Install immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately when all prerequisites have been met.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"

5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Installing with timer

When the trip is completed, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time, such as during the night. A later installation may make sense to meet functional requirements, such as a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Enter the desired timer settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- ▷ All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- ▷ All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- ▷ Hazard warning system.
- ▷ Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- ▷ Parking lights.
- ▷ Horn.
- ▷ Alarm system.
- ▷ Emergency call.
- ▷ Power windows.
- ▷ Glass sunroof.
- ▷ Operate the tailgate or trunk lid.
- ▷ Lock the tailgate.
- ▷ Exit warning if needed.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

In vehicles with an electrical lock, the lock may temporarily not work. In this case, the vehicle can be exited by unlocking the driver's door manually.

Additional information:

Buttons for central locking system, refer to page 95.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services, such as RTTI or Remote Services, will be reactivated automatically during the next trip.

After a longer stationary period, recharge the vehicle battery with the charging cable as necessary.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Data protection

Data transmission

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transmission can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transmission is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▶ BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- ▶ Stored radio stations.
- ▶ Stored shortcuts.
- ▶ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▶ Phone book.
- ▶ Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- ▶ Office data, for instance voice memos.
- ▶ Login accounts.
- ▶ Linking the vehicle with the BMW Cloud.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Reset vehicle data, refer to page 67.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a BMW ID are synchronized with the settings in the BMW Cloud, the settings will remain in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID/driver profiles

Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

When a person logs in with their BMW ID or the driver profile in the vehicle, the stored settings are activated.

General information

The BMW ID can be created in the vehicle, via the BMW app, in the ConnectedDrive portal and at the service center. A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

If a vehicle is used by multiple persons, each person can activate their own personal settings via the BMW ID or via the driver profile.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store seven BMW IDs or seven driver profiles.

If a login using the BMW ID does not occur and no driver profile is activated, the vehicle is in the guest profile.

The login with the BMW ID or the activation of the driver profile can already occur during unlocking. For this purpose, the driver recognition via a vehicle key or a digital key must be assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.

Functional requirements

When a BMW ID or driver profile is created, changed, deleted or edited, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Logging in in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisite:

- ▶ The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:

The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.

- ▶ The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.

- ▶ The vehicle key or the digital key could not be assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the Welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.

Creating a BMW ID

Creating a new BMW ID in the vehicle.

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. "Register now"
4. Scan the QR code shown in the display. The BMW ID is created on the smartphone.

Adding the BMW ID

Adding an existing BMW ID to the vehicle:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3.  "Log in with My BMW App"
Scan the displayed QR code to accept the BMW ID from the BMW app.
 -  "Log in with BMW ID"
Enter the access data for the BMW ID.
4. Depending on the national-market version, the following settings can be selected:
 -  "Settings from BMW Cloud"
The settings stored in the BMW Cloud are applied.
 -  "Current settings"
If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.
 -  "Synchronize BMW ID"
Future changes to the settings are synchronized with the BMW Cloud.
 -  "Continue"

Creating a driver profile

A driver profile must be created.

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "ADD DRIVER PROFILE"

3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:
"Current settings"
If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

Specify the vehicle detection

A driver detection and a PIN can be set up for a BMW ID or a driver profile.

The driver detection offers the following advantages:

-  The stored settings are activated automatically.
-  The settings are not accessible to other persons.
-  The PIN can be used to activate the BMW ID or the driver profile, even if the assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key is not available.

The driver detection is specified immediately following the addition of the BMW ID or after creating the driver profile.

-  "PIN"
Prior to the selection of the driver detection, a PIN must be created.
-  "Vehicle key"
The vehicle key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.
-  "Digital Key"
The digital key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.

Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been defined, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following actions:

- ▶ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▶ By unlocking the vehicle using an external door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you.
- ▶ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the Digital Key.

If there are several vehicle keys or Digital Keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- ▶ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
If the vehicle is unlocked using an unassigned key, the guest profile is activated.
- ▶ If a vehicle key and a Digital Key are detected at the same time, the Digital Key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- ▶ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.
If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If recognition while unlocking the vehicle was not possible, the BMW ID or driver profile is selected on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▶ "Change BMW ID"
 - ▶ Switching the driver profile.
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▶ A BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▶ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▶ Functions that process personal data are not available to protect sensitive, personal data from unauthorized access. This includes select functions of the navigation and the saving of favorites. More information on data processing is available in the ConnectedDrive data protection notes / service descriptions.
- ▶ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▶ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▶ It is not possible to assign a driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▶ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▶ "Change BMW ID"
 - ▶ Switching the driver profile.
3. "Continue as guest"

Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2.  "Change BMW ID"
 -  Switching the driver profile.
3.  Tap the icon of the desired BMW ID or the desired driver profile.

If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the stored data in the BMW Cloud will be retained.

After the deletion, the guest profile will be activated.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be canceled. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page [93](#).

Settings

General information

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1.  Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

-  The type of driver detection.
-  The profile picture.

-  The synchronization with the BMW Cloud.
-  The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

-  The type of driver detection.
-  The profile picture.
-  The profile name.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures.

The personal profile picture from the BMW Cloud can be applied to a BMW ID. This requires that the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is activated in the settings. After the profile picture from the BMW Cloud has been applied, a selection from the predefined pictures is only possible if the profile picture in the BMW Cloud is deleted.

System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible in the following cases, for example:

-  The driver unlocks the vehicle at the external door handle.
-  The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
-  When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID or driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
-  When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.

The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available

now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Icon on the control display
Making calls via the hands-free system. Operating phone functions via iDrive or voice control. Other functions such as managing contacts or texting.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
Internet: Use Internet access via the personal hotspot.	Internet over Wi-Fi.	
Apple CarPlay: Using iOS apps via iDrive and via voice control.	Apple CarPlay via Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	
Android Auto: Using Android apps via iDrive and via voice control.	Android Auto via Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	
USB port: Playing music from a USB device.	USB.	

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on compatible mobile devices is available as follows:

- ▶ On the BMW homepage.
- ▶ Via Hotline/Customer Support
- ▶ At a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- ▶ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- ▶ After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- ▶ For some mobile devices, certain settings are necessary directly on the device, for instance authorization; see the operating instructions of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"

Icons to the right of the device name indicate for which function the device can be used.

Tap the desired icon to activate a function.

Icon	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. Select the desired device.
5. Select the desired setting.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones. The mobile phone with the high-

est priority is preferred, for instance for outgoing calls and messages.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Settings"
5. "Telephone priorities"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible device with Bluetooth interface. Compatible devices, refer to page 72.
- ▶ The vehicle key is in the vehicle for the Bluetooth® telephony.
- ▶ The device is ready for operation.
- ▶ Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- ▶ The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- ▶ Bluetooth presets, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the operating instructions of the device.

Connecting the device

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"
Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in

the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.

7. If necessary, select the connection mode: "Use Bluetooth"

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▶ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.

- ▶ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▶ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

- ▶ Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can telephone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▶ Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all telephone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- ▷ Transmission of the telephone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the telephone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display telephone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- ▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as memos.
Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ The mobile phone has only been connected as an audio source.

Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.

- ▷ Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.
Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▷ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact Customer Relations, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicle Wi-Fi

General information

The vehicle Wi-Fi can be used to exchange data between mobile devices and the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.
- ▷ The BMW app is installed on the mobile device.

Activate vehicle Wi-Fi

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Wi-Fi connections"
4. "Settings"
5. Activate Wi-Fi.

Connecting mobile devices

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Wi-Fi connections"
4. "Connect new device"
5. To register a mobile device on the vehicle Wi-Fi:
 - ▷ Scan the QR code shown in the display.
 - ▷ Enter the displayed access data on the mobile end device.

Personal eSIM

Principle

Personal eSIM is a digital SIM card that is permanently installed in the vehicle.

The Personal eSIM enables making phone calls or the use of mobile data without having a mobile phone in the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the country of registration and service provider, personal eSIM may not be available. Information on availability can be found online, on the BMW website, or in the BMW app.

The use of the vehicle cell phone antenna improves the call quality and the reception of mobile data.

Personal eSIM can be used for the following functions:

- ▶ Telephone services.
 - ▶ Internet use via the personal hotspot.
- It may be necessary to upgrade a corresponding mobile phone contract for this.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▶ The service provider supports the personal eSIM function.
- ▶ The personal eSIM is connected to the desired BMW ID.
- ▶ The BMW ID is added in the vehicle, driver identification is set, and synchronization is activated.
- ▶ The personal eSIM is registered in the vehicle.
- ▶ A mobile phone has been paired for the telephone function.

Additional information:

BMW ID, refer to page 67.

Registering personal eSIM

Before using in the vehicle, you must first register your personal eSIM.

1. In the vehicle, log in using the desired BMW ID.
2. "MENU"
3. "All apps"
4. "Device manager"
5. "PERSONAL eSIM"

6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display. If necessary, scan the displayed QR code with a smartphone and start the activation.
7. Follow the instructions on the smartphone and, if applicable, on the control display.

Alternatively, it is also possible to complete the one-time registration for your personal eSIM via the BMW app.

Settings

It is possible to specify, for instance, if the personal eSIM will be used as a telephone or as a personal hotspot.

Roaming can be activated or deactivated for use in other countries.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "PERSONAL eSIM"
5. "Settings"
6. Select the desired settings.

Pairing mobile phones to personal eSIM

General information

By pairing the desired mobile phone, its contacts can be used in the vehicle.

Pairing telephones

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Personal eSIM"
5. Activate eSIM telephone function: "Telephone functions via eSIM"
6. "Link telephone"
7. Pair the desired telephone.

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Personal Hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection with the data volume of the Personal eSIM via the personal hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the personal hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.
Compatible devices, refer to page 72.
- ▶ Personal eSIM is set up and active.
- ▶ The mobile data setting for the personal eSIM has been activated.
- ▶ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- ▶ Standby state is switched on.

Activating the personal hotspot and connecting the device

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal Hotspot"
4. "Connect new device"
5. "Activate internet access"
6. Register the desired mobile device on the personal hotspot:
 - ▶ Scan the QR code shown in the display.
 - ▶ Enter the displayed access data on the mobile end device.

All devices connected via the hotspot use the data volume of the Personal eSIM.

Enabling/disabling Internet use

Internet use may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal Hotspot"
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet access for mobile devices"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay® preparation

Principle

CarPlay allows select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
Compatible devices, refer to page 72.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are activated on the iPhone.
- ▶ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▶ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"

Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.

5. Select the desired mobile phone on the control display or select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. Select CarPlay as the connection mode:
"Use Apple CarPlay"
8. Confirm the connection mode on the display of the smartphone.

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is set up, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▶ Change the connection type of the already connected device, for instance using as telephone.
- ▶ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▶ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▶ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact Customer Relations, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto® preparation

Principle

Android Auto allows select functions of a compatible smartphone to be operated via Google Assistant voice control and via iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Compatible Android smartphone: Samsung or Google smartphone with Android 10 or an Android smartphone with Android 11, regardless of the manufacturer.
- ▶ Compatible devices, refer to page 72.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- ▶ The smartphone must support a 5 Ghz WiFi connection.
- ▶ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- ▶ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Device manager"
4. "Connect new device"

Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.

5. Select the desired mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. Select Android Auto as the connection mode:
"Use Android Auto"
8. Confirm the connection mode on the display of the smartphone.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is set up, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- ▶ Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- ▶ On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▶ Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact Customer Relations, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

Principle

USB ports with data transfer can be used to play music files.

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port with data transmission:

- ▶ Mobile phones.
- ▶ Audio devices.
- ▶ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page [265](#).

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page [72](#).

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

Follow the following when connecting:

- ▶ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- ▶ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▶ Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- ▶ Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the operating instructions of the device.
- ▶ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▶ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the on-board socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- ▶ Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB

storage device, refer to the operating instructions of the device.

The connected USB device is shown on the control display in the MEDIA menu.

Non-compatible USB devices

- ▶ USB hard drives.
- ▶ USB hubs.
- ▶ USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- ▶ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▶ Devices such as fans or bulbs.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Vehicle key

General information

Two vehicle keys are included in the scope of delivery, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cells can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example, due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is an injury hazard or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach for children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or

button cell has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Remote Engine Start.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 162.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key

must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

NOTICE

Improper batteries in the vehicle key can damage the vehicle key. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and remove the cover, arrow 2, to the side.



2. Remove the battery housing from the vehicle key to the side.



3. Remove the battery from the battery housing.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 3V battery with the positive side facing down.
5. Insert the battery housing into the vehicle key.



6. Insert the cover into the vehicle key.



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Removing the integrated key

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1, and remove the cover, arrow 2, to the side.



2. Slide out the integrated key at the open side of the vehicle key.

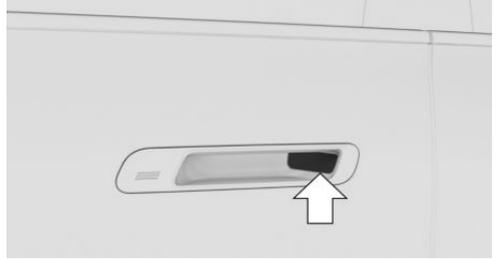


3. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Unlocking via the door lock

1. Press the cover cap in.

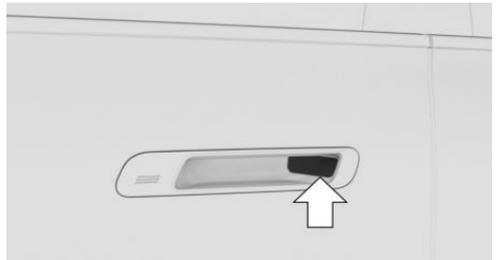
The cover cap is slightly opened.



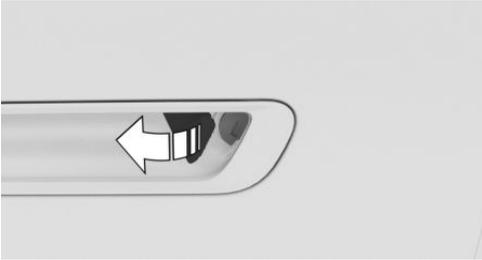
2. Pull the cover cap to the side so that the door lock is clearly visible.
3. Unlock the door lock with the integrated key.



4. Remove the integrated key from the door lock.
5. Press the cover cap in to close it.

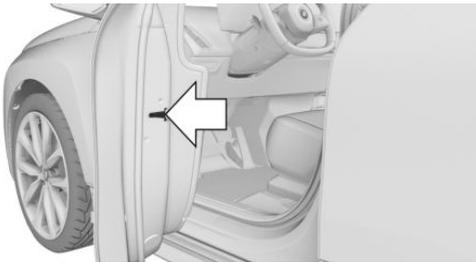


6. Press the cover cap in again to open it slightly.
7. Pull on the cover cap until the door opens.



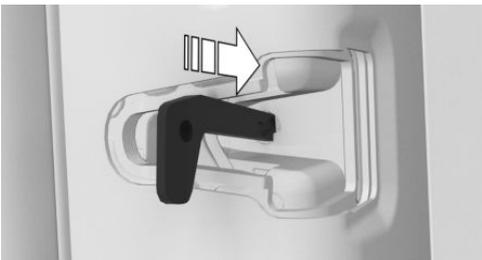
The other doors must be unlocked using the central locking button or manually from the inside.

Locking via the side door lock



Side door lock in the driver's door.

1. Slightly open the driver's door.
2. Lock the side door lock with the integrated key.



3. Close the driver's door.

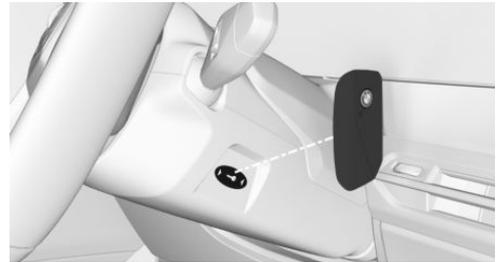
If necessary, lock the other doors from the respective side door lock as well.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on drive readiness if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▶ If the vehicle key is detected:
 - Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.
- ▶ If the vehicle key is not detected:
 - Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.
Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.
- ▶ Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▶ The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.
Place the vehicle key in a different location.
- ▶ Fault of the radio link during charging of the vehicle.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on drive readiness.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▶ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▶ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▶ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▶ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▶ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Actions during unlocking

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Only the driver's door and the charging socket cover will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- ▶ The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▶ If a BMW ID or driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- ▶ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▶ Depending on vehicle equipment, folded up exterior mirrors are folded out.

If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.

- ▶ Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- ▶ The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- ▶ Settings, refer to page 97.
- ▶ Welcome lights, refer to page 162.
- ▶ BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 67.

Actions during locking

The behavior of the vehicle during locking depends on the following settings:

- ▶ The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▶ Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded up automatically when locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- ▶ Pathway lighting can be activated during locking.

The following functions are executed:

- ▶ All doors, the tailgate, and the charging socket cover are locked.
- ▶ Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- ▶ The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 97.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and charging socket cover were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.



2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

On the external door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked at the external door handle with compatible smartphones with a digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to unlock and lock using the Digital Key.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

Unlock vehicle on front door



Reach into the recessed grip of a front door.

Unlocking the vehicle at the rear door

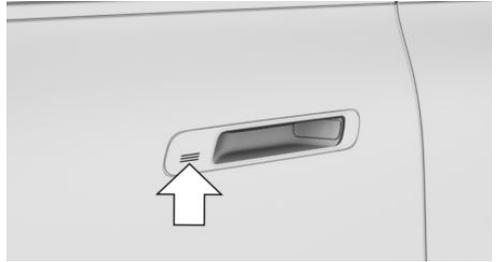


Press and hold the button in the recessed grip to unlock the vehicle and open the rear door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed front door with your

finger for approx. 1 second without reaching into the recessed grip.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the external door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle will be unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 3 ft/1 m around the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, touchless unlocking and locking is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 6 ft/2 m around the vehicle.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a person is detected on a seat when locking:

- ▶ The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- ▶ The charging socket cover remains unlocked.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the charging socket cover will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and the charging socket cover will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 97.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▶ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking using the Digital Key.
- ▶ Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- ▶ The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- ▶ For touchless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key can be located in a radius of six meters around the vehicle.
- ▶ If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, touchless unlocking/locking is not possible until after the vehicle has been driven.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 97.

With the Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which the digital key is installed. It can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

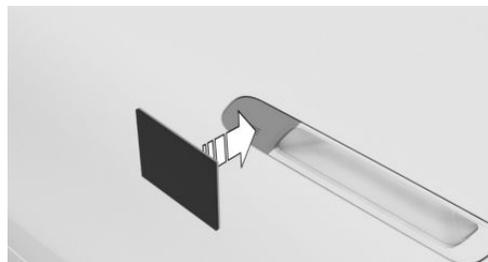
Additional information:

Key Card, refer to page 91.

General information

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold activated Key Card directly and centered on the external door handle of the driver's door.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

With the BMW Digital Key

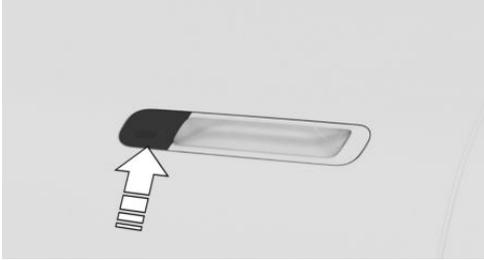
Principle

Depending on the national-market version and equipment, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the near field communication antenna of the smartphone directly and centered on the external door handle of the driver's door. The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- ▶ The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.
This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW app must be installed on a smartphone.
- ▶ Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.
An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Access to the cargo area

General information

The cargo area will be opened to the configured opening height.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

With the vehicle key

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Opening the cargo area



Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

On the trunk

General information

With Comfort Access, the cargo area can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Depending on the national-market version, compatible smartphones with a digital key are also detected automatically. In this case, the cargo area can be opened with a smartphone.

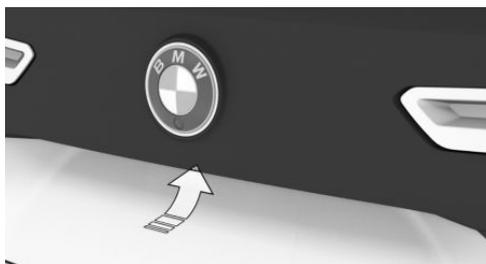
Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▶ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to detect the Digital Key.

Opening the cargo area



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the trunk.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the trunk. Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the cargo area



Press the button on the trunk.

In the interior

Opening the cargo area



Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

Closing the cargo area



Pull and hold the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

The vehicle key or the digital key must be located in the vehicle interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the trunk is closed.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.

- ▶ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- ▶ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- ▶ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

Principle

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person.

Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot movement in the central rear area and the cargo area is opened and closed.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the cargo area may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear area.

If you open the cargo area with no-touch activation, locked doors will not be unlocked.

Depending on national-market version, contactless opening of the cargo area is also possible for compatible smartphones with a Digital Key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Contactless opening and closing of the trunk must be activated in the settings.
- ▶ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to open and close the cargo area contactlessly using the Digital Key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 97.

Opening the cargo area

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Before the cargo area opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving a foot again will stop the opening process. The subsequent foot movement will close the cargo area again.

Closing the cargo area

Perform the foot movement for opening the cargo area.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving a foot again will stop the closing process. The subsequent foot movement will open the cargo area again.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

- ▶ Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- ▶ Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in range of the sensors may cause unintended opening of the cargo area, for instance due to water running down when cleaning the vehicle or with heavy rainfall. To prevent such unintended opening of the cargo area in such

cases, keep the vehicle key at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked trunk manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk is unlocked.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access. Depending on the national-market version, the Key Card may not be available.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

General information

The Key Card must be located in the smartphone tray and a vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate the Key Card.

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to deactivate the Key Card.

When BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Activate Key Card



1. Place Key Card centered into the smartphone tray.
2. Follow instructions on the control display.

Deactivate Key Card

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Key Card"
5. "Deactivate Key Card"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 84.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Place activated Key Card centered into the smartphone tray.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

After drive readiness is switched on, the Key Card can be removed from the tray.

Malfunction

The detection of the Key Card by the vehicle may be disrupted by objects between the sensors and the Key Card, for instance a wallet.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

General information

Availability and range of functions of the BMW Digital Key depend on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile terminals.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a Digital Key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also useful to carry the vehicle key or the Key Card with you if the vehicle has to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card, instead of your smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Additional information:

- ▶ BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 67.
- ▶ www.bmw.com/digitalkey.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- ▶ The vehicle is linked with the Connected-Drive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▶ The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

Enable the digital remote control key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a digital remote control key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

The proof of authorization can be started via the BMW app or via the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, for instance the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle to be enabled.

Follow the instructions in the Digital Key menu in the BMW app or on the Control Display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as digital remote control key.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For instance, if the Digital

Key is handed over to a novice driver, the switch-off for driving stability control systems can be disabled. For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive portal and the BMW app.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the digital remote control key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the Control Display.

Deleting digital keys

General information

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the digital master key

The digital master key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the digital master key is completed immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone with the digital remote control key, the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone with the digital remote control key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

The deletion via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive is executed immediately.

Deletion via iDrive

To be able to delete a digital key via iDrive, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the ve-

hicle or the remote control key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

Reset the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the digital remote control key will be deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The digital remote control key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked as follows:

- ▶ Via the external door handle.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked with no-touch activation. Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking using the Digital Key.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 84.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Using the smartphone tray



1. Place smartphone centered into the smartphone tray.
Ensure that the display is facing up.
2. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

In the interior

With Comfort Access, it is sufficient, depending on the country, for the smartphone with Bluetooth activated to be located inside the vehicle. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- ▶ Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.
- ▶ Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▶ Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview



Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking the vehicle



Press the button with the front doors closed.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button.

Opening the door



Press the button.

The door is unlocked and slightly open.

Push the door outward.

Malfunction

General information

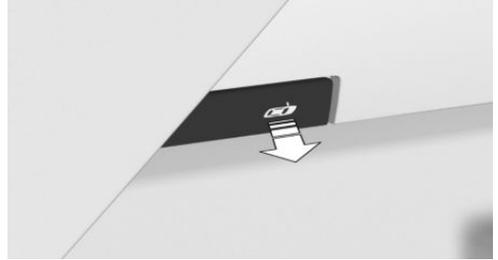
In case of a power failure, the driver's door can be unlocked manually.

Overview



Lever in the driver's door.

Unlocking the driver's door manually



Pull the lever in the driver's door to unlock the driver's door.

Soft-close automatic function

Principle

The soft-close automatic function reduces the effort and noise when closing vehicle doors.

The door can be pushed into the door lock without effort and the door will close automatically.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the Control Display is disabled.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Settings stored in a BMW ID or a guest profile cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

- ▶ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▶ The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- ▶ The availability of certain settings of the driving modes is limited.

Additional information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 67.

Functional requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating the valet parking mode

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"
5. If necessary, "PIN"

If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, enter this PIN now. The PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode.
6. If necessary, enter the PIN.
7. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▶ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.

If PIN was forgotten: enter access data for the BMW ID.

- ▶ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter access data for the BMW ID.

Settings

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door and the charging socket cover are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
 - ▶ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Unlock when approaching"
 - ▶ "Lock when walking away"

Automatic unlocking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"
 - ▷ "Unlock doors when in Park"

After drive readiness is switched off, the locked vehicle is unlocked automatically by pressing the start/stop button or engaging selector lever position P.

Automatic locking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
 - ▷ "Flash on lock/unlock"

Unlocking is signaled by blinking twice, locking by blinking once.
 - ▷ With alarm system:

"Sound on lock/unlock"

Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Cargo area

Cargo area and doors

You can set up if only the trunk will be unlocked or if the doors will also be unlocked when the trunk is unlocked

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Tailgate"

Depending on the equipment, the trunk will be unlocked or opened.
 - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

Depending on the equipment, the trunk will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
 - ▷ "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

The vehicle must be unlocked before the tailgate can be used with the vehicle key.
 - ▷ "Lock tailgate button"

The operation of the tailgate via the vehicle key is disabled.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Opening/closing the cargo area with no-touch activation

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Open with foot movement"
 - ▷ "Close with foot movement"

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood, or the cargo area.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

- ▷ Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- ▷ Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm:
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Visual alarm:
By blinking of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is turned off or on as soon as the vehicle is unlocked or locked.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system blinks once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▶ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

The alarm system is switched on.

- ▶ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.

- ▶ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▶ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

The windows must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▶ In car washes.
- ▶ In duplex garages.
- ▶ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▶ With animals in the vehicle.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

- ▶  Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

- ▶ After turning off the standby state, an option to turn off the interior motion sensor and the tilt alarm sensor will be displayed on the control display.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive readiness must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Window

General information

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 55.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Close the windows



With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

On the external door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the external door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on the national-market version, the windows can also be closed at the external door handle with compatible smartphones with digital key.

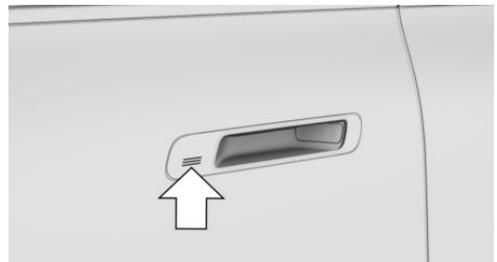
Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.

Functional prerequisites

- ▶ Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.
- ▶ Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone to close the glass sunroof using the Digital Key.

Close the windows



Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows also closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded

in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

In the interior

Overview



Power windows

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Drive readiness is switched on.

The vehicle key or a digital key must be inside of the vehicle.

Opening windows

- ▶  Press the switch to the resistance point.
The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▶  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.
The window opens automatically.
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Close the windows

- ▶  Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is being held.

- ▶  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.
The window closes automatically.
Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Principle

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the  switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the  switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Principle

With the safety switch, it is possible to disable particular functions in the rear. The locking of functions is useful, for instance, when children or animals are carried in the rear.

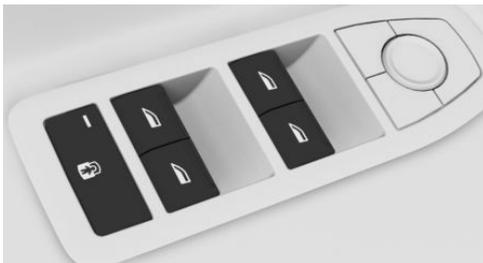
General information

The following functions can be disabled by pressing the safety switch:

- ▶ Opening and closing of the rear windows using the switches in the rear.
- ▶ Opening of rear doors by passengers in the rear.

The rear doors can only be opened from the outside.

Overview



Safety switch

Turning the safety functions on/off



Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

Principle

The glass sunroof can be set either transparent or opaque for sun protection and screen.

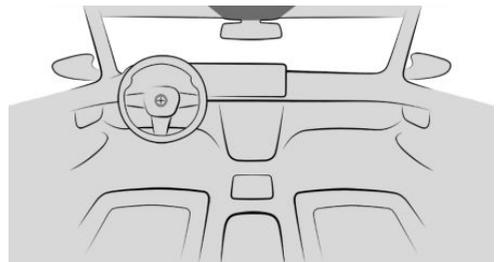
General information

The glass sunroof is automatically set opaque when the vehicle is exited with transparent glass sunroof.

If the vehicle is unlocked within approx. 24 hours, the glass sunroof will automatically switch to the transparent state.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Glass sunroof

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.

Setting the glass sunroof opaque/ transparent



Press the button.

- ▶ The opaque glass sunroof is set transparent.
- ▶ The transparent glass sunroof is set opaque.

Functional limitations

The degree of transparency may vary at extreme temperatures.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- ▶ Seats, refer to page 105.
- ▶ Safety belts, refer to page 107.
- ▶ Head restraints, refer to page 109.
- ▶ Airbags, refer to page 169.

Seats

Safety information

Warning

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Adjusting seats

General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



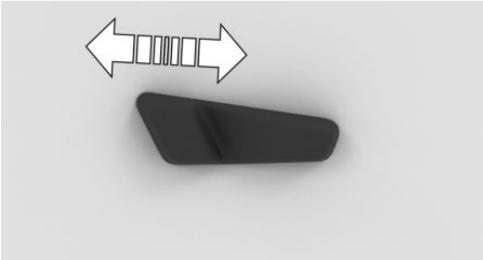
The switches for the seat settings are located at the front doors.

Seat settings menu



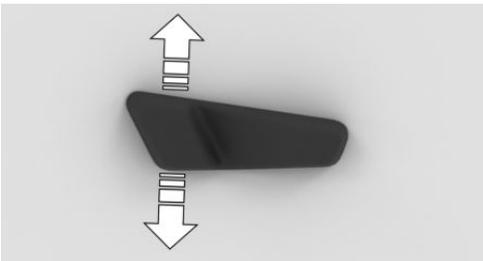
Press the button to go directly to the seat setting menu on the control display.

Setting the longitudinal direction



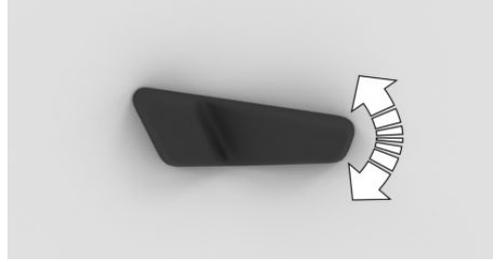
Press switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the height



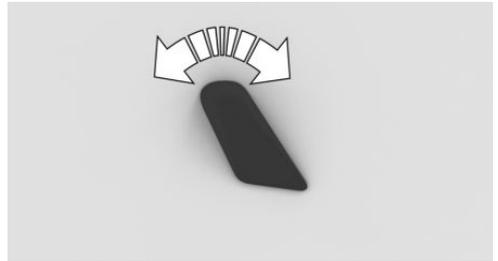
Press switch up or down.

Adjusting seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. Select the desired function.
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ Press arrow left/right:

The bulge is increased/decreased.

- ▶ Press arrow up/down:

The bulge is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting the backrest width

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. Select the desired function.
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat massage

Principle

The seat massage ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation in the lumbar region and can avoid fatigue.

Turning the seat massage on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Massage"
6. "Seat massage"
7. Select the desired setting.

The seat massage is turned on for 20 minutes.

Safety belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace safety belts.

All belt fastening points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the safety belts with proper use of the safety belts and correct seat setting.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page [105](#).

Safety information

Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional inju-

ries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Safety belt tensioners or roll-up mechanism were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, safety belt tensioners, roll-up mechanisms, or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

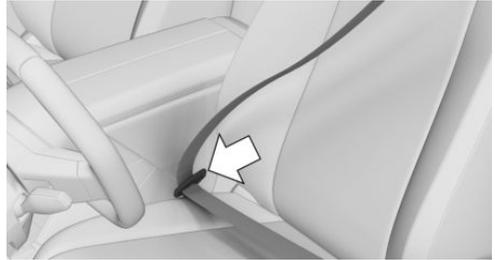
Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.

- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body area.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the safety belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder

General information

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

The safety belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- ▷ When the safety belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- ▷ When the safety belt is unfastened while driving.
- ▷ When objects are present on the front passenger seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state and the safety belt reminder is active.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Safety belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.
	Safety belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.
	Safety belt is only buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Safety belt on the driver's seat is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Front head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

Adjusting the distance

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing the head restraints

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

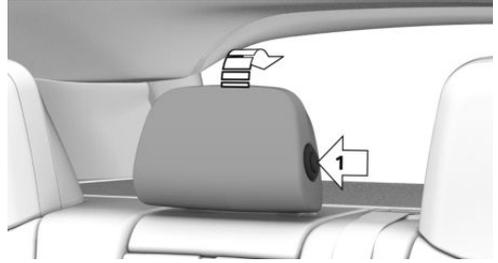
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the middle head restraint

General information

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.

Folding head restraint

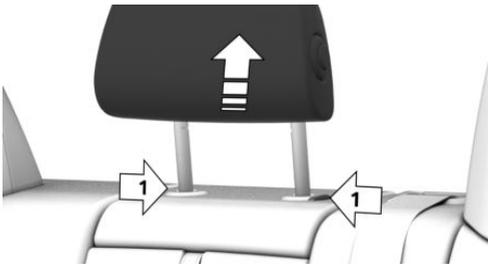


- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front to the stop. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing the center head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the center seat.

1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the buttons, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.



Installing center head restraint

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.



Fold the exterior mirror in and out.



Adjust the exterior mirrors.

Icon	Meaning
	Select left exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Select left exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror



Press the button to select the left exterior mirror. The LED lights up.



Press the button to select the right exterior mirror. The LED lights up.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirror

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.



Press the button.

Folding is possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.

Exterior mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor



1. Press the button. The LED lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

Press the button again. The LED goes out.

Interior mirror

General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically. Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the rear of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Electric steering wheel adjustment

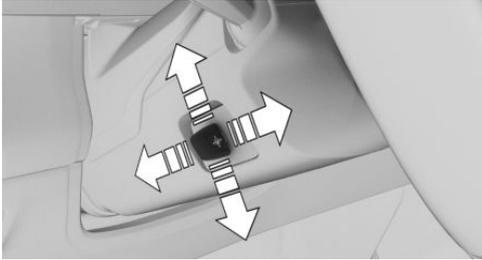
General information

The steering wheel adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the steering wheel moves temporarily into the upper position.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Turning the steering wheel heating on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  steering wheel heating.
3. Select the desired setting.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▶ Seat position.
- ▶ Exterior mirror adjustment.
- ▶ Steering wheel position.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: height of the Head-up display.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview



The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.

2.  Press the button. The LED lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Go to Settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.
The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat and armrest heating

Principle

The system heats seats and armrests as needed.

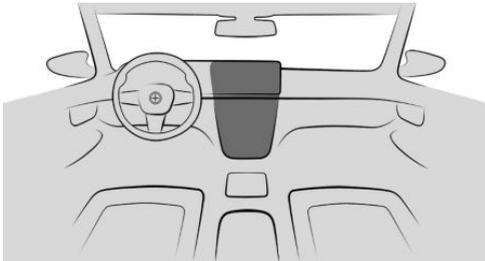
General information

Seat heating can also be used without armrest heating. Deactivate the armrest heating as needed.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are switched on automatically with the temperature selected last.

Automatic climate control

Overview



Turning the seat heating on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  seat heating.
3. Select the desired setting.

If Efficient drive mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Additional information:

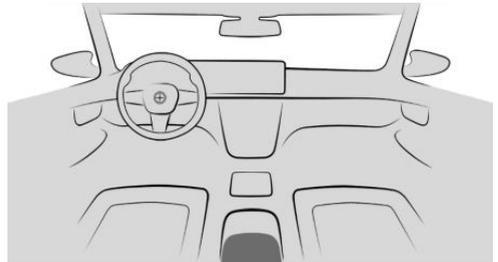
Driving mode Efficient, refer to page 287.

Turning the armrest heating on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. Select desired seat.
4. "Heat armrests and seat"

Rear automatic climate control

Overview



Turning on the seat heating



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Turning off the seat heating



Press and hold the button, until the LEDs turn off.

Active seat ventilation

Principle

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Turning active seat ventilation on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  Seat ventilation.
3. Select the desired setting.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children shorter than

5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 172.

Safety information

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 172.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is disabled.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the lower mountings of the child restraint system are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited. There is a risk of injury or mortal hazard. Make sure that the lower mountings are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

⚠ Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. The mounts or attachment points can be damaged when attaching other objects. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Attach child restraint systems only at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.
	Seats equipped with lower mountings are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower mountings of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before attaching child restraint systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Installing child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.

Child restraint systems with tether strap**Safety information****⚠ Warning**

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

⚠ Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

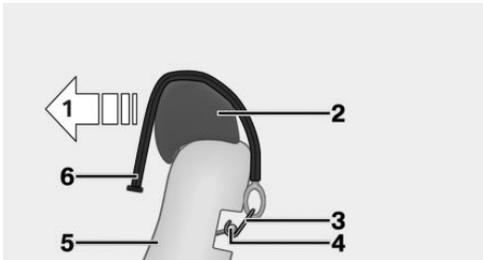
⚠ Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. The mounts or attachment points can be damaged when attaching other objects. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Attach child restraint systems only at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
 	<p>The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.</p>

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Driving direction
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Attachment point/eye
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Outer seats: guide the upper retaining strap over the head restraint to the anchor.
For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the attachment point where applicable.
2. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.

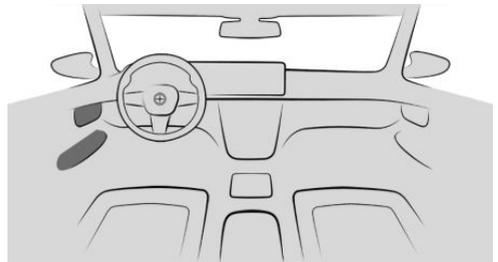
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
5. Middle seat: lower and engage head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Button in vehicle



- 

Press the button. The LED illuminates when the safety function is turned on.

The rear windows and doors are locked and cannot be operated in the rear.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Driving

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

BMW eDRIVE

Principle

BMW eDRIVE is the designation for the electric drive technology. The vehicle features a high-voltage system that consists of two electric motors and a high-voltage battery, among other things.

General information

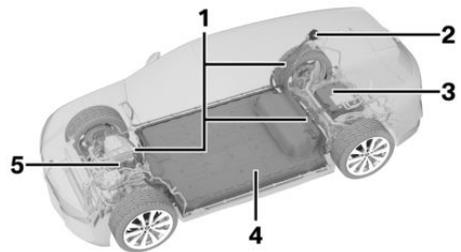
The eDRIVE system exhibits the following special features:

- ▶ The vehicle is operated emissions free using its electrical drivetrain.
- ▶ The special high-voltage battery supplies the electric motors as well as the comfort features with power.
- ▶ The high-voltage battery is charged via a charging cable, for instance when parked or while driving utilizing energy recovery.
- ▶ The vehicle can be charged very rapidly at special charging stations. Charging is also possible at domestic socket outlets.
- ▶ On the go, the energy recovery ensures that only little energy is lost when braking.
- ▶ When the vehicle decelerates, the electric motors act as alternators and convert the kinetic energy released into electric energy.

The electrical energy partially recharges the high-voltage battery to increase the range.

- ▶ The two electric motors power one axle each. This equips the vehicle with an electrical all-wheel drive.

Overview



- 1 High-voltage cables, orange
- 2 Charging socket
- 3 Drive unit, rear
- 4 High-voltage battery
- 5 Drive unit, front

Functions

Electric driving: eDRIVE

The vehicle is driven electrically.

The accelerator pedal can be used not just for acceleration, but also for deceleration.

During deceleration, the electric motors act as alternators and charge the high-voltage battery. With a sensible driving style, this function can be used for especially efficient energy recovery and comfortable driving, using just the accelerator pedal.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Depending on the national-market version, the acoustic pedestrian protection generates a continuous driving noise.

▶ With a stationary vehicle and turned on drive readiness as soon as the selector lever position P is exited.

▶ When driving up to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

A speaker system broadcasts the noise to the environment.

As a result, other road users, for instance pedestrians or cyclists, can better perceive the vehicle.

Energy recovery: CHARGE

The high-voltage battery is charged while driving through energy recovery.

The electric motors act as alternators and convert the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy.

The high-voltage battery can be charged while driving in different situations:

- ▶ The accelerator pedal is only slightly depressed.
- ▶ The accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▶ The pressure on the accelerator pedal is reduced.

Display

The displays provide information about the current state of the drive and visualize the system's use.

Additional information:

Displays, refer to page [138](#).

Energy-saving driving and maximizing the range

General information

Energy-saving driving is the basic prerequisite for as large a range as possible. eDRIVE provides various functions that assist with an energy-saving driving style. The eDRIVE functions assist in controlling the range and increase it, if necessary. The following descriptions provide an overview of the available functions and the personal measures.

Before driving

eDRIVE allows pre-conditioning of the vehicle before start of the trip. Pre-conditioning provides more range than using full air conditioning while driving.

Depending on vehicle equipment: preheating/ precooling during the charging process can provide maximum range when driving off.

Additional information:

Stationary climate control, refer to page [259](#).

Trip planning and special functions of the navigation system

Several special functions of the navigation system support trip planning taking into account the electric range:

- ▶ Range map: shows the action range on the navigation map, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▶ Charging assistant under points of interest in navigation: helps to find and possibly include a public charging station in the desired route, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual.

During driving

- ▶ "Efficient Mode": activate driving mode to increase the range.
My Modes, refer to page [129](#).
- ▶ Information on the expected range.
Range prediction, refer to page [139](#).
- ▶ Information on the current driving condition.
Displays in the Live Vehicle menu, driving condition, refer to page [156](#).
- ▶ Observe notes for increasing the range.
Increasing the range, refer to page [285](#).
- ▶ Observe notes for an optimized driving style.
Driving mode Efficient, refer to page [287](#).
- ▶ Activating adaptive recuperative braking for efficient driving.

Adaptive recuperation, recuperative braking, refer to page [286](#).

- ▶ Follow the instructions for the efficiency trainer.

Efficiency trainer, refer to page [288](#).

After the trip

- ▶ Charging the vehicle and planning the next trip.
Charge vehicle, refer to page [290](#).
- ▶ Observe preparations extended stationary periods.
Service life of the high-voltage battery, long stationary periods, and taking the vehicle out of service, refer to page [299](#).

BMW app

The BMW app provides mobility-based services and applications.

Safety of the high-voltage system

Follow the information on the safety of the high-voltage system.

Additional information:

Safety of the high-voltage system, refer to page [15](#).

Operating noises

Operating noises may occur due to the electrical system. For instance, these operating noises may occur in the following situations:

- ▶ When cooling the high-voltage battery during the charging process.
- ▶ When cooling the high-voltage battery with the drive-ready state switched on.
- ▶ When climatizing the car's interior.

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods

Observe the information on taking the vehicle out of service and on longer idle periods.

Additional information:

Service life of the high-voltage battery, long stationary periods, refer to page [299](#).

Start/Stop button

Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Drive-ready state cannot be switched on, as long as the charging cable is connected.

Additional information:

- ▶ Drive-ready state, refer to page [46](#).
- ▶ Standby state, refer to page [46](#).
- ▶ Charging cable, refer to page [292](#).

Drive readiness in detail

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Turning on drive readiness

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

A signal tone sounds. Drive-ready state is switched on.

Display in the instrument cluster



The READY display indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving.

Driving off

Functional requirements

Driving is possible under the following conditions:

- ▷ The state of high-voltage battery charge is sufficient.
- ▷ The driver's door is closed.
- ▷ Charging cable is detached.

Driving

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Engage gear lever position D, B or R.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal to drive.

State of charge in strong temperature fluctuations

In the case of strong temperature fluctuations and a low state of charge of the high-voltage battery, it may not be possible to start the vehicle again at the beginning of the next trip. Recharge vehicle with a low state of charge in time.

Selector lever positions

Display

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

Gear position D

Selector lever position for normal driving.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

Gear lever position for parking the vehicle. In selector lever position P, the drivetrain is blocked and the parking brake is engaged.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- ▷ After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position D, R or B is engaged.
- ▷ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and neither brake nor accelerator pedal are depressed when drive-ready state is switched on and the selector lever is set to position D, R, or B.
- ▷ With standby state turned off.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is engaged and the parking brake is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

B gear position with high energy recovery

Principle

Selector lever position B is a gear position with a high energy recovery.

General information

Gear lever position B offers the following characteristic:

- ▶ High level of energy recovery when the accelerator pedal is released.
- ▶ Major deceleration when releasing the accelerator pedal, if necessary to a standstill of the vehicle.
- ▶ The vehicle does not drive off when the brake pedal is released.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.
- ▶ The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.
- ▶ Before shifting out of selector lever position P, remove the charging cable from the vehicle; otherwise, the gearshift request will not be executed.

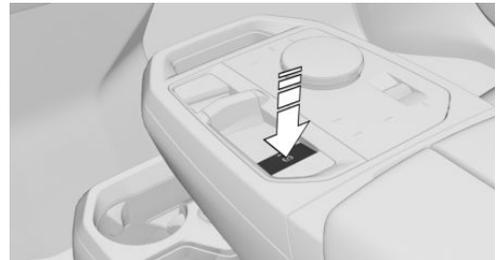
Engage gear lever position R, N, D, B

1. Fasten driver's safety belt.
2. Tilt or pull the selector lever into the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Changing between gear lever position D and B: pull selector lever to D/B.



Engaging selector lever position P



(P) Press the button.

When stopping the vehicle

Selector lever position D or R

At inclines, the system prevents rolling back against the set driving direction and provides drive-off support.

Selector lever position B

The system prevents the vehicle from rolling when the vehicle has come to a standstill and the accelerator pedal is not operated.

Driving away

Engage a gear position and step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The parking brake is released automatically.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not switch standby state off in car washes.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Engage selector lever position N.
4. Switch off drive-ready state.

In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

The vehicle can roll.

Irrespective of standby state, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a hazardous area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press the Start/Stop button three times without stepping on the brake.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the selector lever to position N.
An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.
Position N is indicated on the selector lever.
4. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Turning off drive-ready state

Park the vehicle. Noises from the electrical system such as for cooling the high-voltage system might still be audible.

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Apply brake and engage the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

If leaving the vehicle stationary for longer periods, follow the instructions in the Mobility chapter.

Service life of the high-voltage battery, long stationary periods, and taking the vehicle out of service, refer to page [299](#).

Driving in detail: eDRIVE

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

The braking effect of the electric motor can be stronger than for a vehicle with combustion engine. Abrupt braking and slow-down may confuse other road users. There is a risk of accident. Carefully release the accelerator pedal. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

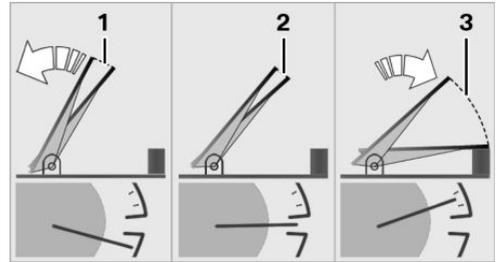
⚠ Warning

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other road users might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Without energy recovery, there is no braking effect of the electric motor available. The vehicle could roll further than anticipated. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Accelerator pedal positions, displays



- 1 Deceleration and recuperation, CHARGE
- 2 Rolling
- 3 Acceleration or constant speed: ePOWER

Deceleration and recuperative braking

Deceleration

The degree of the deceleration depends on the selector lever position, the energy recovery setting and the driving situation.

Depending on the degree of the deceleration, the brake lights will come on without stepping on the brake pedal.

The deceleration very fast in selector lever position B.

During the deceleration, energy is recovered and the high-voltage battery is charged.

Reduced deceleration

⚠ Warning

Without energy recovery, there is no braking effect of the electric motor available. The vehicle could roll further than anticipated. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In the event of danger, such as with locked wheels, energy recovery, and thereby the deceleration, is reduced in order to prevent unstable driving situations.

Energy recovery: CHARGE

With the CHARGE energy recovery, the electric motors acts as alternators when decelerating and convert the kinetic energy of the vehicle to electrical energy.

The high-voltage battery is recharged in part through energy recovery.

Energy can be recovered if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The vehicle is moving.
- ▷ Selector lever position B, D or R is set.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.

The energy recovery is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 148.

Energy cannot be recovered, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ Selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▷ While drive stability control systems are active or adjusting the vehicle, even though this is not indicated by an indicator light.
- ▷ The high-voltage battery is fully charged.
- ▷ When temperature of the high-voltage battery is very low or very high.

In winter it might be possible that the energy recovery is temporarily unavailable after startup.

Exemplary driving situations

If deceleration is foreseeable while driving, this can be used for energy recovery.

The following exemplary driving situations may be suitable:

- ▷ Decelerating downhill.
- ▷ Deceleration before a red traffic light.

Avoid late or strong braking. Instead, decelerate the vehicle using energy recovery.

Strength of recuperative braking

In selector lever position B, the energy recovery is high and the deceleration is strong.

For driving in selector lever position D, the strength of recuperative braking can be adjusted via iDrive.

- ▷ Depending on the equipment adaptive energy recovery: energy recovery and deceleration are automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

Adaptive recuperation, recuperative braking, refer to page 286.

- ▷ High energy recovery: the vehicle decelerates fast, more energy is returned to the high-voltage battery.
- ▷ Average energy recovery.
- ▷ Low energy recovery: the vehicle decelerates more slowly, less energy is returned to the high-voltage battery.

Setting the strength of energy recovery

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Energy recovery in D"
6. Select the desired setting.

Heavily discharged high-voltage battery

If the high-voltage battery is heavily discharged while driving, the drive power and some comfort features are reduced incrementally in order to extend the range.

Heated high-voltage battery

With a stationary vehicle

In isolated cases, when the vehicle is stationary, it is possible for the high-voltage battery to overheat, for instance at extreme outside tempera-

tures and direct sunlight. Drive-ready state cannot be turned on if the high-voltage battery is overheated.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Another message will indicate when drive-ready state is available again.

While driving

If the high-voltage battery overheats while driving, the drive power is reduced incrementally in order to cool down the high-voltage battery. The ePOWER power gauge in the instrument cluster decreases. If the temperature increases further, park the vehicle until the high-voltage battery has cooled down. If the power gauge falls to 0, the drive-ready state is switched off and the vehicle comes to a stop.

My Modes

Principle

My Modes influence the characteristics of the handling of the vehicle and the staging of the overall experience in the interior.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

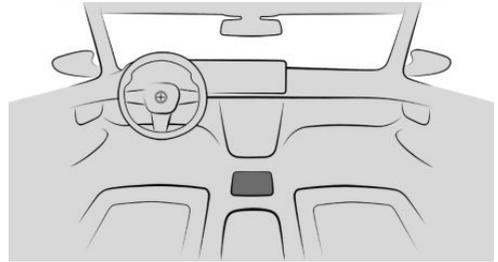
General information

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are affected, for instance:

- ▶ Drivetrain.
- ▶ Steering.
- ▶ Chassis.
- ▶ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Cruise control.
- ▶ Comfort features in the vehicle interior.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Displays in the instrument cluster



If applicable, the selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driving modes

Button	Driving mode
	"Personal Mode"
	"Sport Mode"
	"Efficient Mode"

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, additional driving modes may be available.

Driving modes in detail

- ▶ "Personal Mode":
Driving mode for comfort oriented settings. Individual comfort settings are available. The driving mode is automatically activated when the drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▶ "Sport Mode":

Driving mode for increased agility of the vehicle.

Individual settings can be entered, such as for driving dynamics, chassis and drivetrain.

"SPORT PLUS": with this setting under driving dynamics, the Dynamic Stability Control and thereby the driving stability will be limited.

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 201.
- ▷ Setting for increased driving dynamics, refer to page 202.
- ▷ "Efficient Mode":
Driving mode for a consumption optimized setting with adaptive display.
Efficiency trainer, refer to page 288.

Selecting the driving mode



1. Press the button.
2. "Switch mode"
3. Select the desired driving mode.

Setting the driving mode

Some driving modes can be set individually.



1. Press the button.
2. Select the driving mode.
3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired settings.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

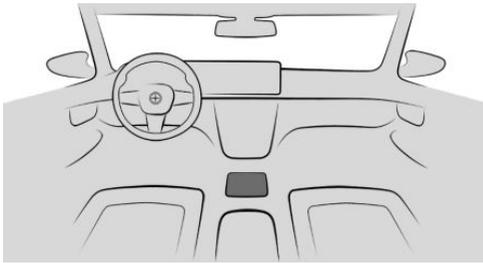
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

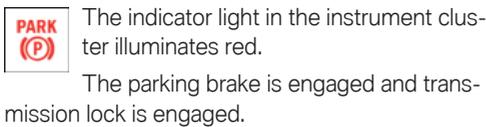
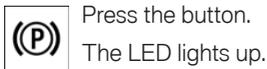
Overview

Button in the vehicle



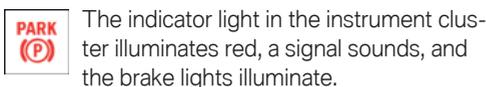
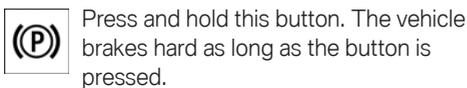
Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle



While driving

Using while driving serves as an emergency braking function.



A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged and the transmission lock is set when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging the parking brake automatically

In some situations, the parking brake is engaged automatically, e.g., through Automatic Hold.

Additionally, the system can be set to automatically engaging the parking brake when the drive readiness is turned off.

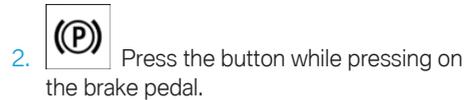
1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Parking brake"
6. Select the desired setting.

In selector lever position N, the parking brake will not be engaged automatically.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



The LED and indicator light turn off.

The parking brake is released.

The transmission lock remains engaged until a gear position is selected.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light turn off.

Using the parking brake via iDrive

The parking brake can also be engaged or disengaged via iDrive. Additionally, further information is displayed.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Parking brake"
6. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or in case of a fault, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Turn on standby state.



2. Press the button.



3. Press the button again after 2 seconds.

Messages for the parking brake extinguish.

Possible functional noises are normal.



The indicator light indicates that the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

When a gear position is engaged, the vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

In selector lever position N, Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

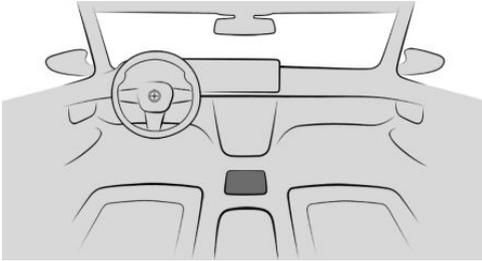
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive readiness.

2.  Press the button.
The LED lights up.

 The indicator light lights up green.
Automatic Hold is functional.

After every vehicle restart, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

 After stopping, the vehicle is automatically protected from rolling as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

 The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold will be temporarily deactivated.

Switching operational readiness off

 Press the button.
The LED goes out.

 The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

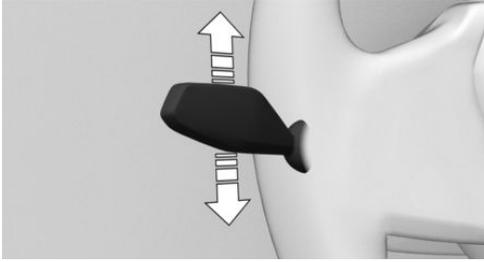
If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▶ High beams on, arrow 1.

The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.

- ▶ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are turned on.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

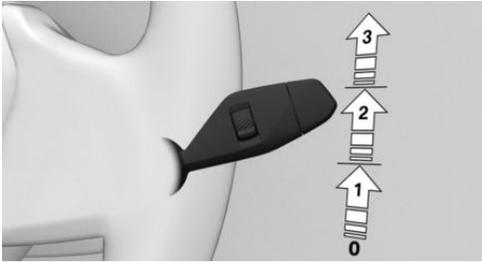
Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Turn on window wiper system

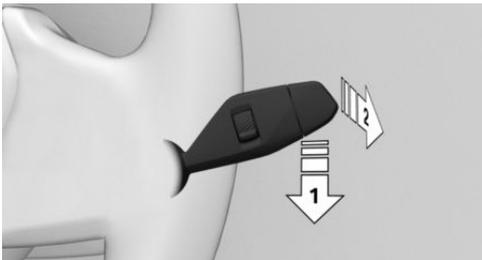


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▶ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Turn off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down or forward.

- ▶ Turning off: press the lever down, arrow 1, until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▶ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position, arrow 1, as well as pushing lever in position 0 or position 1 forward, arrow 2.

The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

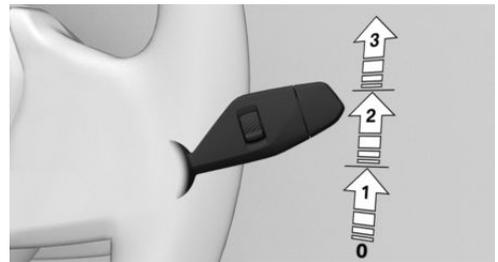
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activate rain sensor



Press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

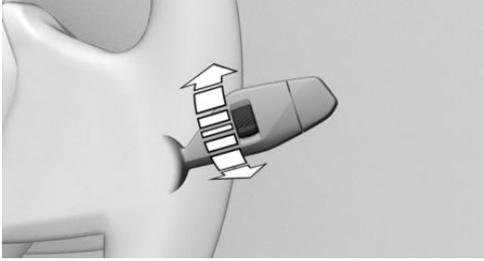
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivate rain sensor

Press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity

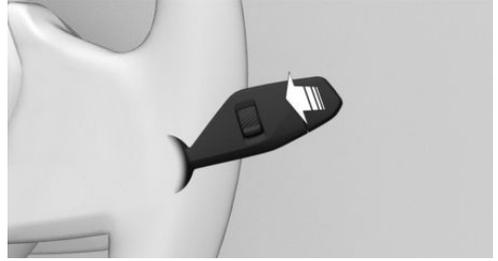


Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield directly in front of the wiper blade when the wipers move up and down.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

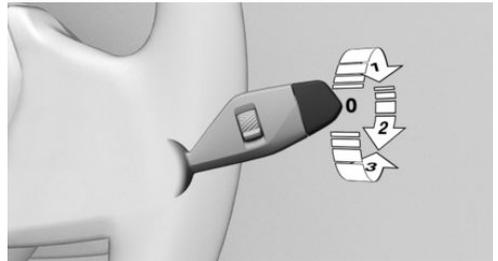
When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear window wiper



Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▶ Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▶ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▶ In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- ▶ In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

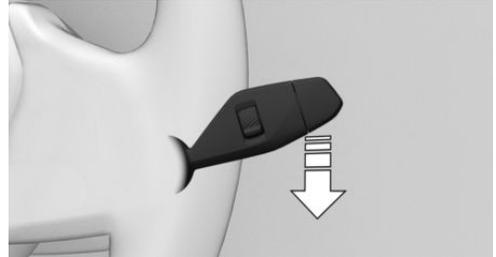
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



Folding down the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Displays

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Instrument cluster

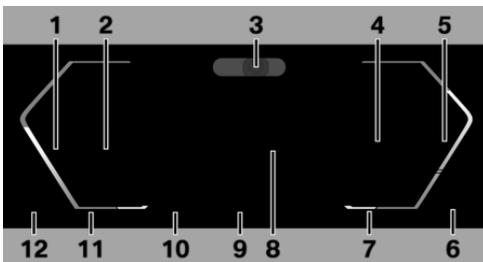
Principle

The instrument cluster is a variable display. The displays and layout adapt to the respective drive mode.

General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



- 1 Speedometer
- 2 Driver assistance systems 205
Parking assistance systems 225
- 3 Driver Attention Camera 199
- 4 Efficiency trainer 288
Selection lists 153

- Check Control 142
- 5 Power gauge 148
- 6 Range 150
- 7 Selector lever position 123
Outside temperature 150
- 8 Central display range, configurable 138
Navigation display
Charging screen 141
Digital speed
Trip odometer, see Trip data 155
- 9 My Modes drive mode 129
- 10 Speed Limit Assistant 221
Speed Limit Info 152
- 11 Time 150
- 12 High-voltage battery charge state indicator 148

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	Display menu bar in the instrument cluster: press button.
	Selection up or down: turn thumbwheel. Selection to the left or right: tilt thumbwheel in the corresponding direction. Confirm selection: press thumbwheel.

Configuring the central display range

The contents for the central display range in the instrument cluster can be individually configured

and displayed, for instance the display of trip data.



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"
Select the menu by tilting the thumbwheel as needed.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel:
 - ▶ Reduced display.
 - ▶ Trip data.
 - ▶ Range prediction.
 - ▶ Assisted View.
 - ▶ With navigation system: route preview.
 - ▶ With navigation system: map view.
 - ▶ Entertainment.

Some contents for the central display range can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

Additional information:

Head-Up Display, refer to page [157](#).

Configuring the layout

In Personal Mode drive mode, the layout in the instrument cluster can be individually configured and displayed.



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "LAYOUT"
Select the menu by tilting the thumbwheel as needed.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel.

Settings

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be adjusted individually via iDrive, for instance a second actual speed.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Range prediction

Principle

The range prediction indicates the extent to which the range can be influenced with the current driving style. This supports an efficient driving style.

General information

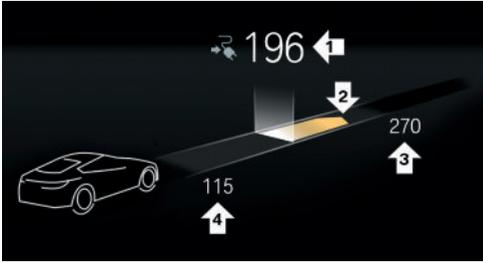
The current range is influenced by many factors, including speed.

The range trend shows the expected development of the range with the current driving style. The range trend is based on the average consumption that is calculated for the directly traveled route section.

Additional information:

- ▶ Range, refer to page [150](#).
- ▶ Increasing the range, refer to page [285](#).

Overview



- ▷ Current range, arrow 1.
- ▷ Range trend, arrow 2.
- ▷ Possible range with very low energy consumption, arrow 3.
- ▷ Possible range with very high energy consumption, arrow 4.

Range prediction with active guidance

With active guidance, the distance to the destination and the expected charge state of the high-voltage battery when the destination is reached are also displayed.

Icon	Description
	The expected battery charge state when the destination is reached is displayed next to the icon.
	The icon is displayed when guidance was started in the navigation system. Information from the navigation system is taken into account for the calculation of the current range.

Assisted View

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the following information is displayed in animated vehicle's surroundings:

- ▷ With active Driver Assistance: information about the driver assistance systems.
- ▷ With active parking assistance: information about parking and maneuvering.

General information

Depending on the settings, information on active Driver Assistance can be displayed permanently or temporarily in the instrument cluster.

The information on parking and maneuvering is always displayed as soon as the Automatic Parking Assistant is active.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Permanent display

The information for the Driver Assistance can be configured permanently in the central display range of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

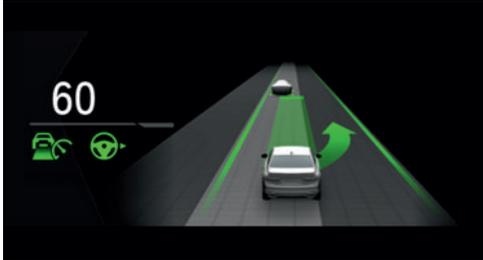
Configuring the central display range, refer to page 138.

Temporary display

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Display Assisted View when Driver Assistance is active"

Display



An example with active Driver Assistance: the indicator and warning lights for the distance control and the Automatic Lane Change Assistant indicate a lane change to the next lane. At the same time, the lane change to the next lane is shown with animation in the Assisted View.

System limits

The system's detection capability is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Additional information:

- ▶ Cameras, refer to page 41.
- ▶ Radar sensors, refer to page 42.

Charging screen

Principle

The charging screen displays information about the charging process in the instrument cluster.

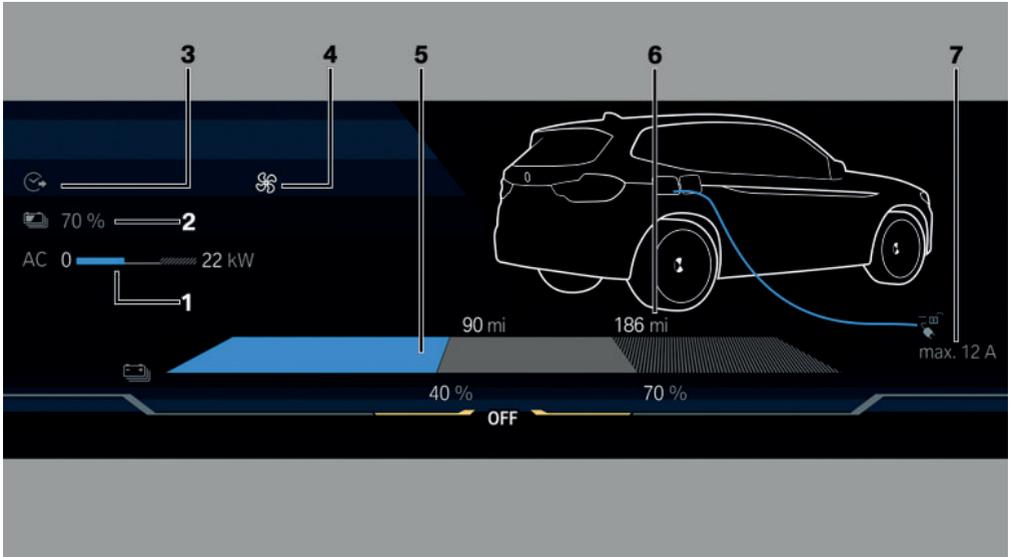
General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Additional information:

Charge vehicle, refer to page 290.

Overview



- 1 Current charging capacity [298](#)
- 2 Set charge target [297](#)
- 3 Set departure time [298](#)
End of charging time [298](#)
- 4 Climate control [299](#)
- 5 Current range [298](#)
Current state of charge [298](#)
- 6 Range when reaching the charging destination [298](#)
- 7 Set or maximum current limit [290](#)

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Tilt the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to the left to hide Check Control messages.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the fault is eliminated. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6.  "Check Control"
7. Select the text message.

Display

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with an icon in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent text messages, the added text will be automatically displayed on the control display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"

5. "Vehicle status"
6.  "Check Control"
7. Select the desired text message.
8. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Principle

Indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle. Indicator and warning lights indicate malfunctions in monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder



Safety belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Safety belt reminder, refer to page [108](#).

Airbag system



Indicator light comes on briefly: indicates that the entire airbag system and safety belt tensioners are operational when

drive readiness is switched on.

Indicator light illuminates continuously: there is a malfunction. Have the vehicle checked immedi-

ately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 169.

Parking brake



The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Brake system



Malfunction in the brake system, braking assistance may be faulty. Continue to drive moderately. Avoid abrupt braking, take longer braking distance into account.



Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forward Collision Mitigation



Risk of collision, for instance with a person.



Risk of collision, for instance with an oncoming or a vehicle driving ahead.



Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.



Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.



General risk of collision.

One of the indicator lights illuminates: a hazardous situation has been detected.

One of the indicator lights blinks: there is a risk of collision.

Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

Cruise Control with distance control



Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: braking and evading.

Additional information:

Distance control, refer to page 210.

Assisted Driving



Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Yellow lights

Assisted Driving



The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane boundary driven over.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Antilock Braking System ABS



Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.



System malfunction. Steerability is limited during emergency braking.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forward Collision Mitigation



Depending on national-market version: the system is restricted or has failed.



Depending on national-market version: the system is deactivated.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

Dynamic Stability Control



Indicator light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control controls the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control malfunction or initializing. No driving stabilization.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 201.

Dynamic Stability Control restricted, or increased driving dynamics activated



Dynamic Stability Control is limited, or increased driving dynamics is activated.

"SPORT PLUS" is activated.

Additional information:

- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 201.
- ▶ Setting for increased driving dynamics, refer to page 202.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM



Flat tire monitor reports tire pressure loss in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 319.

Tire pressure monitor



The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▶ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▶ In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▶ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or specialist workshop as needed.
- ▶ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 313.

Steering system



Steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Lane departure warning



Depending on national-market version: the system is restricted, deactivated, or has failed.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 184.

Active Blind Spot Detection



Depending on national-market version: indicator light comes on, if applicable, in combination with a Check Control message: the system is restricted or has failed.



Depending on national-market version: system is switched off.

Additional information:

Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page [188](#).

Acoustic pedestrian protection



Acoustic pedestrian protection has malfunctioned. Increased caution when maneuvering.

In case of repeated malfunctions, have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Acoustic pedestrian protection, refer to page [121](#).

Charging capacity limited



Additional information:
Charge vehicle, refer to page [290](#).

Green lights

Turn signal



Turn signal is on.
Unusually rapid blinking of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page [133](#).

Parking lights



Parking lights are switched on.
Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, and roadside parking lights, refer to page [161](#).

Low beams



Low beams are switched on.
Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, and roadside parking lights, refer to page [161](#).

Automatic High Beam Assistant



Low beams are switched on and the Automatic High Beam Assistant is activated.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page [164](#).

Lane departure warning



Depending on national-market version: indicator light comes on: a lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle, and warnings can be issued.

Indicator light flashes: the vehicle is about to drive across the lane markings.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page [184](#).

Active Blind Spot Detection



Depending on national-market version: the system is switched on. Warnings and, if necessary, steering interventions can occur within the system limits.

Additional information:

Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page [188](#).

Automatic Hold



Automatic Hold is functional. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.



Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed. The vehicle is automatically secured against rolling after stopping.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page [132](#).

Cruise control



The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page [207](#).

Cruise Control with distance control



Indicator light illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.

Indicator lamp flashes: preceding vehicle has started driving.

Additional information:

Distance control, refer to page [210](#).

Speed Limit Assistant



The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page [221](#).

Assisted Driving



The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page [215](#).

Automatic Lane Change Assistant



Arrow symbol for lane change green: the system carries out a lane change.



Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: system detected a lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Additional information:

Automatic Lane Change Assistant, refer to page [218](#).

Assisted Driving Plus



The system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page [220](#).

Blue lights

High beams



High beams have been switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page [134](#).

Automatic High Beam Assistant



High beams are switched on via the Automatic High Beam Assistant.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page [164](#).

Gray lights

Safety belt reminder



Safety belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Safety belts, refer to page [107](#).

Cruise Control with distance control



Indicator light flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Distance control, refer to page [210](#).

Assisted Driving



The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page [215](#).

White lights

Cruise Control with distance control



No distance control displayed since the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Distance control, refer to page [210](#).

Assisted Driving Plus



The system is ready.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page [220](#).

State of charge indicator

Safety information

Warning

Even when it is indicated that the high-voltage battery is discharged, the high-voltage system is always still under high voltage. There is a risk of fire or a risk of injury. Do not touch or change live parts, for instance orange high-voltage cables, even when the batteries are discharged.

Display



When standby and drive readiness are turned on, the available battery charge state of the high-voltage battery is continuously displayed in percent in the instrument cluster.

An arrow next to the battery icon indicates the vehicle side on which the charging socket cover is located.

In case of temperature fluctuations, the battery charge state may change.

Power gauge

Principle

The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage of the overall power.

General information

The available drive power may be reduced due to the following factors:

- ▶ Heavily discharged high-voltage battery.
- ▶ Extreme outside temperatures.

- ▶ Prolonged or high-power driving, for instance with a sporty driving style or when driving on mountain roads.
- ▶ Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: engine power restriction defined via BMW Digital Key.

The gray ePOWER area is automatically adjusted.

If needed, icons in the power gauge indicate a reduction of the drive power.

Example symbol	Description
	Reduced drive power due to a cold drivetrain.
	Reduced drive power due to increased drive temperature. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

The degree of the energy recovery depends on the settings for the energy recovery.

Additional information:

- ▶ BMW Digital Key, refer to page 93.
- ▶ Increasing the range, refer to page 285.
- ▶ Driving in detail: eDRIVE, refer to page 127.

Display



Needle in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when decelerating.

Needle in the area of arrow 2: output in percent.

Energy recovery display

Depending on the setting for the energy recovery, the display in the power gauge will change.

Icon	Meaning
	Low energy recovery. Selector lever position D is engaged.
	Average energy recovery. Selector lever position D is engaged.
	High energy recovery. Selector lever position D or B is set.
	Adaptive recuperation is activated Adaptive recuperation, refer to page 286.

Standby state and drive-ready state

 The lettering OFF in the instrument cluster indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

 READY indicates the drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Operating condition of the vehicle, refer to page 45.

Date and time

Various settings can be applied for the date and time display such as the date format.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set and automatic time setting can be activated. With automatic time setting, the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to $+37\text{ °F}/+3\text{ °C}$ or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above $+37\text{ °F}/+3\text{ °C}$ there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

General information

The expected range for the energy stored in the high-voltage battery is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

Always make sure that the range is sufficient for the planned trip. The range is dynamic and can abruptly change.

The range can be reduced or increased based on the following factors:

- ▶ Driving style.
- ▶ Traffic conditions.
- ▶ Drive mode change.
- ▶ Climate and terrain conditions.
- ▶ Automatic climate control settings.
- ▶ After determination of a route through the navigation system depending on the route profile, route distance and selected speed.
- ▶ When exiting a route or recalculating a route.

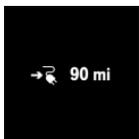
Information about the current range can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Check Control messages indicate a limited range.

Additional information:

- ▶ Range prediction, refer to page [139](#).
- ▶ Increasing the range, refer to page [285](#).

Display



The range is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

Range with active guidance

 The icon is displayed next to the range when guidance was started in the navigation system. Information from the navigation system is taken into account for the calculation of the current range.

Heavily discharged high-voltage battery



The high-voltage battery is heavily discharged. The drive power will be reduced. Heating and climate control functions will be deactivated.

In this state, the exact range can no longer be calculated. A short range may still be available depending on the ambient conditions.

Re-establishing the drive-ready state can help increase the range slightly, for instance to remove the vehicle from a hazardous area.

State of charge in strong temperature fluctuations

In the case of strong temperature fluctuations and a low state of charge of the high-voltage battery, it may not be possible to start the vehicle again at the beginning of the next trip. Recharge vehicle with a low state of charge in time.

Service notifications

Principle

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available distance travelled or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6.  "Required services"
 - Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
7. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Icons

Icon	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6.  "Required services"
7. "Vehicle inspection"
8. "Date:"
9. Select the desired setting.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

The Speed Limit Info can be shown or hidden via iDrive in the instrument cluster. Depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. "Speed limits"
8. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
	Current speed limit.
	The display may vary depending on vehicle equipment.
	No data for the current speed limit available.
	Speed Limit Info not available.

Settings

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Warning when speeding": activate/deactivate the flashing of the Speed Limit Info display in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, the Head-up Display when the currently valid speed limit is exceeded. The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assistant settings.
 - ▶ "Show excess speed": the speed limit that is detected by Speed Limit Info is displayed with a mark on the speedometer.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▶ Camera, refer to page 41.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▶ Traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▶ Traffic signs do not comply with the standard.
- ▶ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▶ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▶ When roads deviate from the navigation, such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▶ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▶ When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▶ In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Selection lists

Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- ▶ Entertainment source.
- ▶ Current audio source.
- ▶ List of most recent telephone calls.

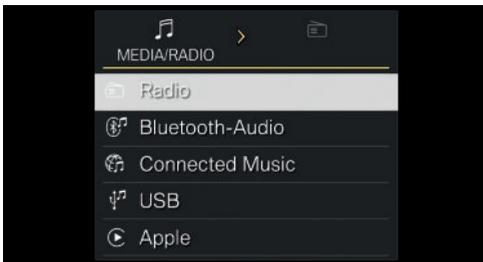
If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Control elements	Function
	<p>Change entertainment source: press the button.</p> <p>Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.</p>
	<p>Display list of most recent telephone calls: press the button.</p>
	<p>Selection up or down: turn thumbwheel.</p> <p>Selection to the left or right: tilt thumbwheel in the corresponding direction.</p> <p>Confirm selection: press thumbwheel.</p> <p>The list of the current entertainment source can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.</p>

Display



An example:

After opening the entertainment source, tilt the thumbwheel to the left or right as needed to change sources. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Turn the thumbwheel up or down to select the desired entry in the list. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Live Vehicle

Principle

In the Live Vehicle menu, relevant information is displayed automatically on the control display depending on the driving situation and drive mode set.

General information

The center of the display is the virtual picture of your own vehicle, which shows the current state of the vehicle, such as an open door. Fault statuses are not taken into account.

In the Live Vehicle menu, you can choose between an adaptive display with changing content and static content.

Adaptive content

The following content is displayed in alternating order and, if necessary, depending on the selected drive mode:

- ▶ Vehicle status, refer to page 157.
- ▶ Current driving condition, refer to page 156.
- ▶ Sport displays, refer to page 157.
- ▶ Efficiency trainer, refer to page 288.
- ▶ Trip data, refer to page 155.

Static information

The following information may be shown permanently on the control display regardless of the driving situation and drive mode set.

- ▶ Vehicle status.
- ▶ Trip data.

Adjusting the display

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Adaptive content": different content is displayed in varying order.
 - ▷ "Trip data": trip data is permanently displayed.
 - ▷ "Vehicle status": vehicle status is permanently displayed.

Trip data

Principle

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip mileage, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown dynamically or permanently on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the equipment and the set interval and driving mode:

- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ Average consumption depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Travel time depending on the configured interval.

- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Counter for energy recovery depending on the configured interval.

Displaying trip data continuously

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Trip data"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered is displayed in the instrument cluster.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.
- ▷ Total mileage, arrow 4.

Average fuel consumption

The average consumption is determined on the basis of various distances.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current energy consumption. The efficiency of the driving can be monitored.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Since start of trip ()": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
 - ▷ "Since last charge ()": the values are automatically reset after charging.
 - ▷ "Since factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
 - ▷ "Since Individual ()": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Since Individual ()".

Using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel:

1. Display trip data in the instrument cluster.
2. Press and hold the thumbwheel.

Via iDrive:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated: "Since Individual ()".

Current driving condition

General information

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following conditions are displayed:

- ▷ Driving.
- ▷ Efficient rolling.
- ▷ Battery is charging.
- ▷ Adaptive recuperation is active.
 - Depending on the situation, additional information on adaptive recuperation is displayed.

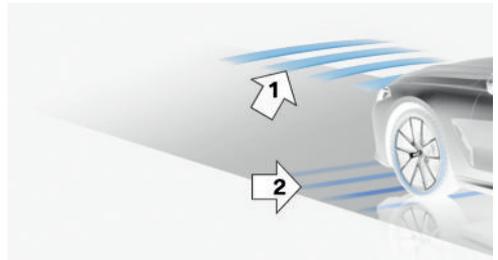
Additional information:

Adaptive recuperation, refer to page [286](#).

Functional requirements

- ▷ Personal Mode or Efficient Mode drive mode must be selected.
- ▷ With Live Vehicle, the following settings must be selected: "Adaptive content"

Display



An example:

The adaptive recuperation is active, arrow 1.

The high-voltage battery is charged when the vehicle is decelerating, arrow 2.

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Functional requirements

- Sport Mode must be selected.
- With Live Vehicle, the following settings must be selected: "Adaptive content"

Display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.
- Speed, electric motor;
- Temperature, electric motor.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems, such as for Check Control.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the vehicle status is shown dynamically or permanently on the control display.

Displaying the vehicle status continuously

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 319 .
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 313 .
	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 142 .
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 151 .

Head-up Display

Principle

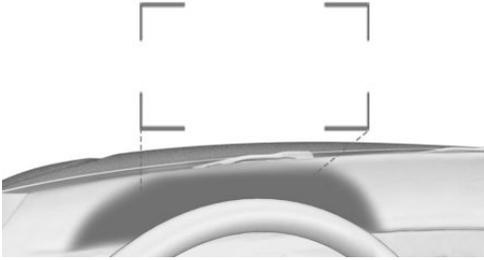
The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed.

General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Overview



The protective glass of the Head-up display is located between the steering wheel and the windshield.

Configuring a view

Regardless of the display in the instrument cluster, different views can be set up for the Head-up display, for instance a reduced view.



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "HEAD-UP"
Select the menu by tilting the thumbwheel as needed.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel.

Display

Turning the Head-up display on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Lists and messages.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the base settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Settings

Individual settings can be entered for the Head-up display, such as for the height, brightness or illustration. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately such as for Driver Assistance.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise illustration.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly recommended to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

Lights

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

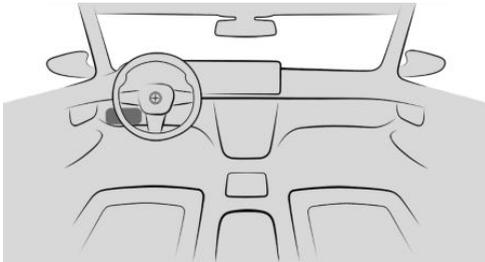
Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Lights and lighting

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Automatic headlight control.
	Low beams.
	Lights off.
	Lights off.

Functions via iDrive

Icon	Function
	Automatic headlight control.
	Low beams.
	Parking lights.
	Lights off.
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting.
	Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Automatic headlight control

Principle

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

If the low beams are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

Activate automatic headlight control



Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button lights up.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Turn on parking lights

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Exterior lighting"

4. "Parking light"



The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Turn off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- ▶  Press the button on the light switch element.
- ▶  Press and hold the button on the light switch element.
- ▶ Turn off light via iDrive.
- ▶ Turn on drive-ready state.

After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

Low beams

Turn on low beams



Press the button on the light switch element.

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Press the button again to switch on the low beams when the standby state is switched on.

Turn off low beams

Depending on the national-market version, the low beams can be turned off in the low speed range:

- ▶  Press the button on the light switch element.
- ▶  Press and hold the button on the light switch element.
- ▶ Turn off light via iDrive.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Left roadside parking light" or "Right roadside parking light"

Welcome lights

Principle

The exterior lighting is turned on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"

4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
 - ▶ "Welcome and goodbye"
 - When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

Turning on the welcome light

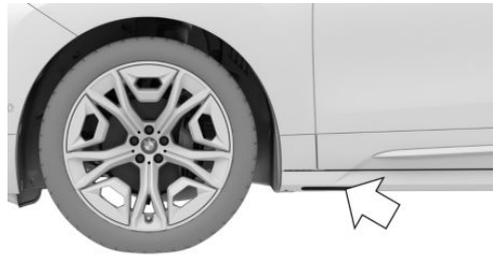
- ▶ Automatically on approach.
- ▶ During unlocking.

- ▶  Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

Concept

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Switching pathway lighting on

- ▶ After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.



- ▶ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Setting the duration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Daytime running lights

General information

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activate/deactivate daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the national-market version: "Daytime driving lights" or "Rear daytime driving lights"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▶ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▶ Cornering light.

Activating the adaptive lighting functions



Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button lights up.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering-wheel angle and other parameters, the laser high beams follow the course of the road.

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Principle

The Automatic High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Automatic headlight control is activated.
- ▶ Low beams are switched on.

Activate Automatic High Beam Assistant

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Additional settings"
5. "Automatic High Beams"



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low beams and high beams.



The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

Interruption of the journey with activated Automatic High Beam Assistant: the Automatic High Beam Assistant remains activated when continuing the journey.

The Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.



To reactivate the Automatic High Beam Assistant, press the turn signal lever up, arrow 1.

Deactivate Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1, or pull the turn signal lever backward when the high beams are switched on, arrow 2.

When the Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated via iDrive, the operation with the turn signal lever is not possible.

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Setting at standstill only.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ Light is turned off.

Increase sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▶ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- ▶ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-observed oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▶ In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▶ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Laser high beams

Principle

The headlight range of the high beams is increased and provides better illumination of the road.

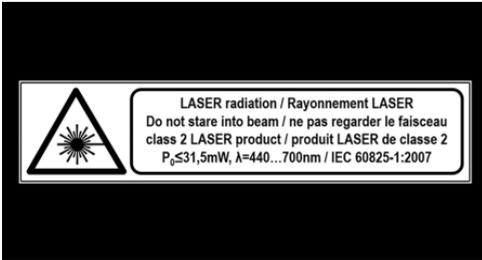
General information

The laser high beams are integrated into the headlights and emit from there.

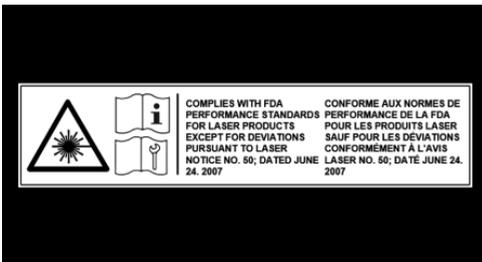
When the high beams are turned on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high beams are automatically turned on in addition to the LED high beams.

Depending on the national-market version, additional information can be taken from the laser sign on the headlight.

Safety information



The sign is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.



The info label is located on the headlight and is visible when the hood is open.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted in darkness and with turned on parking lights or low beams.

Setting the brightness

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Cockpit brightness at night"
5. Select the desired setting.

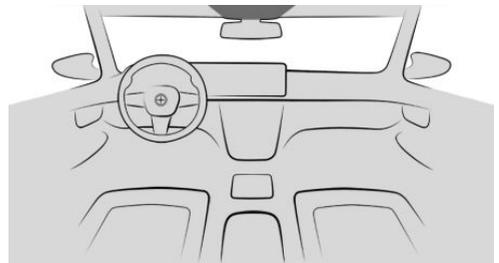
Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Interior lighting menu



Reading lights



Interior lights

Turning interior lights on/off

Using the button:



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

Via iDrive:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Reading light"
5.  Tap on the icon.

Turning reading lights on/off

Using the button:



Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Via iDrive:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Reading light"
5. Tap the desired seat.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Background light" or "Accent lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or opened doors, are indicated by light effects.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Lighting events"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for night drive

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

Speaker lighting

Principle

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated.

General information

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

Turning speaker lighting on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Safety

Vehicle equipment and options

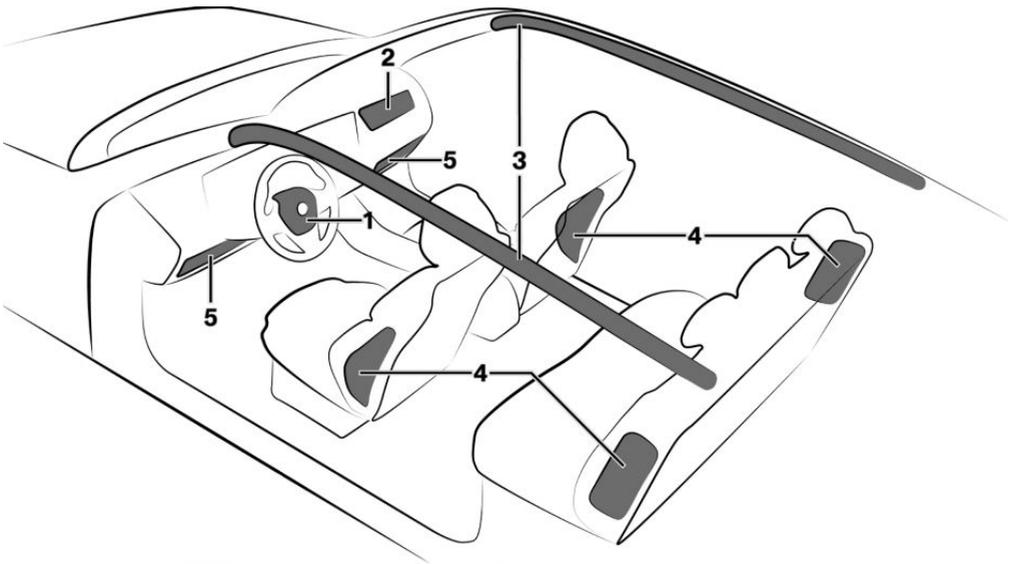
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available

now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Airbags



- 1 Front airbag, driver
- 2 Front airbag, front passenger
- 3 Head airbag
- 4 Side airbag
- 5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag in the rear protects the chest and lap area on the side of the bodies of the occupants in the outer rear seats.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

Depending on the national-market version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- ▶ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▶ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▶ Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests

against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.

- ▶ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- ▶ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▶ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▶ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- ▶ Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▶ Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated airbag versions.
- ▶ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▶ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▶ Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction



- ▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Setting the front seat positions

General information

The power that triggers the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

Principle

The automatic front passenger airbag deactivation can detect if the front passenger seat is occupied.

Accordingly, the front and knee airbags, as well as the front passenger side airbag depending on the model, are activated or deactivated.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Functional requirements

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- ▶ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▶ Sit upright in the seat with your back against the backrest.
- ▶ Sit down with your feet touching the floor.

Installing child restraint systems

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat:

- ▶ Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child

restraint system manufacturer when using child restraint systems.

- ▶ Make sure that the seat surface of the child restraint system rests as flat as possible on the seat surface.
- ▶ Move the head restraint up or remove it to ensure that the child restraint system rests as flat as possible against the rear seat backrest.
- ▶ Observe the maximum size of the child restraint system, for example to avoid possible touching the roof.

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

More information: installation of child restraint systems, refer to page 117.

Indicator light for the front passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light shortly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
---------	----------



The indicator light is continuously illuminated when the seat is not occupied or when a child is detected on the seat in a provided child restraint system as intended. The airbags on the passenger's side are not activated.

The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the passenger's side are activated.

Check the status of the indicator light before and also while driving when the front passenger seat is occupied.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

Occupancy detection

The occupancy detection meets the statutory requirements of the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 208 and deactivates the passenger airbags under certain conditions.

Collision warning systems

General information

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.
- ▷ Exit warning, refer to page 183.
- ▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 184.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 188.
- ▷ Side collision mitigation, refer to page 190.
- ▷ Rear-end collision preparation, refer to page 192.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on national-market version, some of the systems are automatically activated whenever you start driving.

The following functions are adjustable.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle delivery.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

Objects are only considered if they are within the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page [41](#).

Forward Collision Mitigation

Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system may help reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- ▶ Warning function in rear-end collision situations, refer to page [177](#).
- ▶ Warning function for oncoming traffic, refer to page [178](#).
- ▶ Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic, refer to page [179](#).
- ▶ Warning function for pedestrians, refer to page [180](#).
- ▶ Warning function at intersections, refer to page [181](#).
- ▶ Evasion Assistant, refer to page [182](#).

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

As soon as the speed drops below these values again, the system will respond again according to its settings.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing when Forward Collision Mitigation is activated. There is a risk of accident. Turn Forward Collision Mitigation off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, front.

Turning the Forward Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page [175](#).

Turning system off manually

Depending on national-market version, the adjustment can only be made when the vehicle is at a standstill or in a very low speed range.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"

6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The more sensitive the warning time is adjusted, the more warnings will be displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings and responses.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Visibility and field of vision also affect the timing of the warnings.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, the following icons are displayed in the instrument cluster and Head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
	Depending on the national-market version: System is limited or has malfunctioned.
	Depending on the national-market version: System is deactivated.
	Risk of collision, for instance with a person.
	Risk of collision, for instance with an oncoming or a vehicle driving ahead.
	Risk of collision, for instance with a crossing vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

The image of the respective icon may vary, because the system may detect multiple objects.

Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- ▷ A red icon lights up:
A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- ▷ A red icon flashes:
There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.
- ▷ A warning signal sounds:
There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.
- ▷ Automatic brake intervention:

Depending on the equipment and situation in case of an imminent danger of collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

If a warning is active, the maximum brake force is used when the brake is applied. A prerequisite is that the brake pedal is applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

A brake intervention can be canceled by stepping on the accelerator pedal, releasing the brake pedal or with an active steering movement.

Depending on the equipment and situation, the brake intervention can occur up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

Objects are only considered if they are within the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button

Malfunction

In the event of a system fault, a Check Control message or indicator/warning lights will generally be displayed.

A system fault can be triggered by a malfunction of individual components, for instance:

- ▶ Sensors, for instance camera.
- ▶ Control units, for instance for the Dynamic Stability Control.

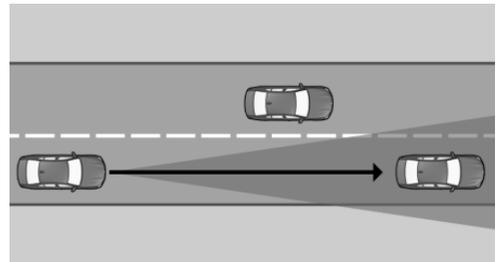
Warning function in forward collision situations

Principle

The warning function in forward collision situations warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

When the vehicle is driven so that it is intentionally approaching another vehicle, the Forward Collision Warning and brake intervention are delayed in order to avoid false system responses.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- ▶ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual rear view.

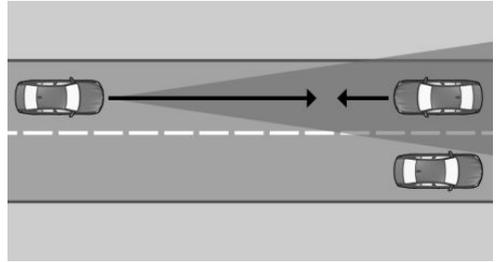
Warning function for oncoming traffic

Principle

The warning function for oncoming traffic can warn of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

In case of a possible risk of collision, a brake intervention is triggered.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▶ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic

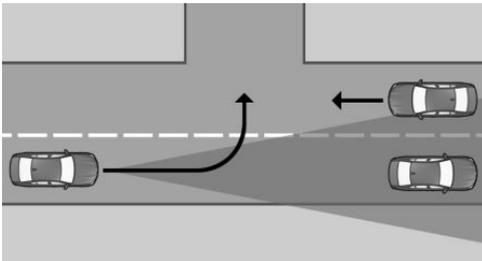
Principle

There is a risk of an accident with oncoming vehicles when turning across the oncoming lane. The system may prevent such accidents.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▶ Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that are hidden by other vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual front view.

Upper speed limit

The system is active when the own speed is below approx. 15 mph/25 km/h.

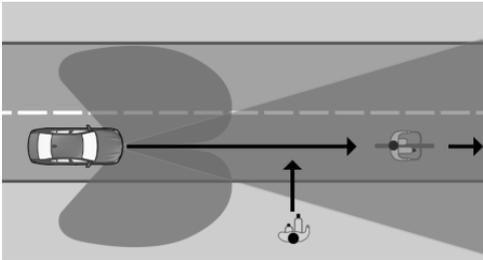
Warning function for pedestrians

Principle

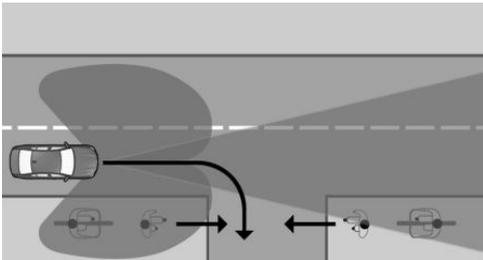
In the city speed range, the Pedestrian Warning function warns of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation on a straight route.



Sensors detect the traffic situation when turning.

Persons within the detection range who are detected by the system are taken into account.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected pedestrian is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

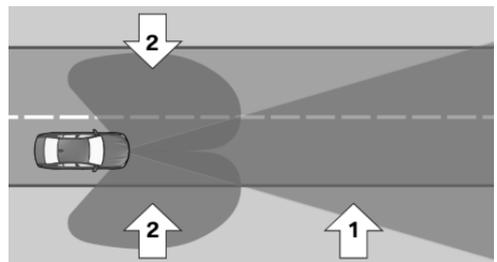
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range



The detection range consists of the following parts:

- ▶ Area in front of the vehicle, arrow 1.
- ▶ With side radar sensors in front: side areas, arrows 2.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

Upper speed limit

Depending on vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians when the vehicle speed is below 50 mph/80 km/h.

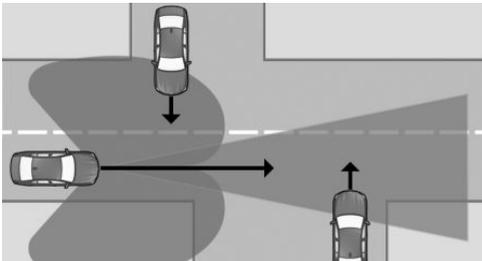
Warning function at intersections

Principle

In the city speed range, the Warning function at intersections warns of a possible risk of collision with cross traffic at intersections and junctions and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation.

Vehicles that cross your driving direction can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 174.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Crossing vehicles when they are hidden by buildings, for instance.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual side view.
- ▷ Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.

Upper speed limit

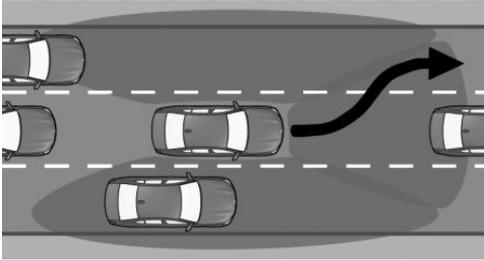
The system responds to crossing vehicles when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can support the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

General information



The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible.

Sensors monitor and detect the clearance in front of the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the areas next to the vehicle are also monitored.

If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted supporting steering movements.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Functional requirements

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- ▷ Sensors detect sufficient clearance around vehicle.

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle or detected pedestrian is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Warning when a pedestrian is detected.
	Warning for unknown obstacles.

Warning function with evasion support

A warning is displayed when there is an imminent risk of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system is designed to provide assistance during evasive maneuvers when there is a risk of collision.

A message in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the Head-up-display signals the evasion support.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear view.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

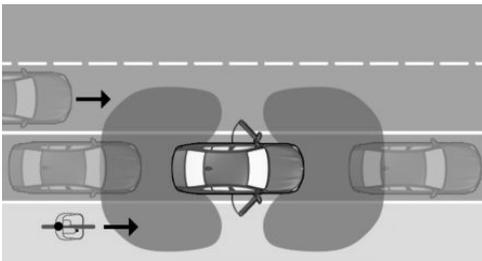
Exit warning

Principle

The Exit warning can help prevent accidents.

The system can warn the occupants when they are opening the doors and a risk of collision with approaching objects is detected.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

The system monitors the surrounding area of the vehicle for a limited time after getting in or after parking.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warning functions.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Turning the exit warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The exit warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the completion of the last trip.

Turning the system on/off manually

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit warning"
7. "Off"

Adjusting the exit warning

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Turning the warning signal on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Exit warning"
7. "Warning tone"

Displays

Light in the exterior mirror



The light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, warnings are also indicated by the ambient light in the interior.

Warning function

Prewarning

In the event of a prewarning, the light in the exterior mirror lights up, as does the ambient light, depending on vehicle equipment.

An object was detected in the opening area. Increased awareness is required.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning, the light in the exterior mirror flashes, as does the ambient light, depending on vehicle equipment. In addition, a signal tone sounds.

There is a risk of collision when opening the doors.

Door functions

In vehicles with electrical door locks, unlocking is delayed.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Fully or partially hidden objects.
- ▷ Stationary or very slow objects.
- ▷ Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ The speed of an approaching vehicle is too fast or too slow.
- ▷ In curves.
- ▷ In case of fully or partially hidden objects.

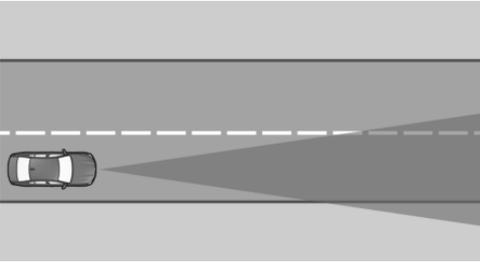
Lane Departure Warning with active return

Principle

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

An automatic steering intervention may help keeping the vehicle in its lane.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, the steering wheel is vibrating. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before leaving the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page [186](#).

Turning system off manually

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Off"

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Expanded"

A warning and steering intervention always occur when the system detects that the vehicle is intending to exit the lane or drive over a road marking.

- ▷ "In dangerous situations"

In case of an interrupted road marking; the warning and steering intervention occur when crossing the lane is detected as being unintended or the radar sensors detect an oncoming vehicle.

Depending on national-market version, if there is continuous lane marking; a warning and steering intervention occur when the system detects that the vehicle is about to unintentionally exit the lane or drive across a lane marking.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turn steering intervention on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Meaning
	Depending on the national-market version: Icon illuminates green: at lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued. The system can perform steering interventions.
	Icon flashes green: the vehicle is about to drive across the lane markings.
	Depending on the national-market version: Icon is illuminated yellow: the system is limited, deactivated or has malfunctioned.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.



In addition, the icon begins to flash.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- ▶ With accelerating or braking hard.
- ▶ When blinking.
- ▶ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▶ In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control adjusts.
- ▶ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.

Warning signal

Depending on the national-market version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel during the steering intervention itself, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, a continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message advise to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning or an active steering intervention will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▶ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▶ When returning to your own lane.
- ▶ With accelerating or braking hard.
- ▶ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▶ When blinking.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control is controlling the vehicle or it is limited.
- ▶ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▶ With manual steering intervention.
- ▶ When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- ▶ Lane boundaries are not detected.
- ▶ When the system limits are reached.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ In tight curves or on narrow roads.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control is controlling the vehicle or it is limited.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. Depending on the

national-market version, a yellow icon is also illuminated.

Active Blind Spot Detection with active return

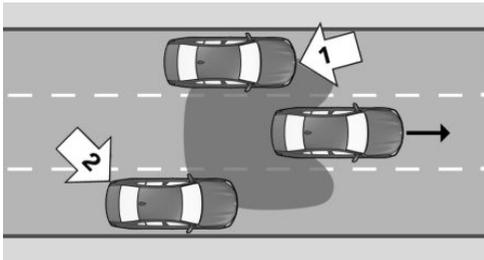
Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The light in the exterior mirror warns at different steps.

An automatic steering intervention may help keeping the vehicle in its lane.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

The system will warn in the previously named situations prior to a lane change.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting:

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turn steering intervention on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. "Steering intervention"

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Meaning
	<p>Depending on the national-market version:</p> <p>The icon is illuminated green: the system is turned on.</p> <p>Warnings and, if necessary, steering interventions can occur within the system limits.</p>
	<p>Depending on the national-market version:</p> <p>Symbol illuminates yellow, if applicable, in combination with a Check Control message: the system is restricted or has malfunctioned.</p>
	<p>Depending on the national-market version:</p> <p>The icon is illuminated yellow: the system turned off.</p>

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



The light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

In case of an acute warning, the steering wheel briefly vibrates and the light in the exterior mirror blinks brightly.

An acute warning is given when the following conditions are met:

- ▶ Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- ▶ Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- ▶ Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: when there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane marking is crossed, the system engages the active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on

the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

The steering intervention occurs when a minimum speed is reached. The minimum speed is displayed on the control display.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light in exterior mirror during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Displaying warnings

Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▶ In tight curves or on narrow roads.
- ▶ The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version: the steering intervention may be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ If the camera is impaired.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

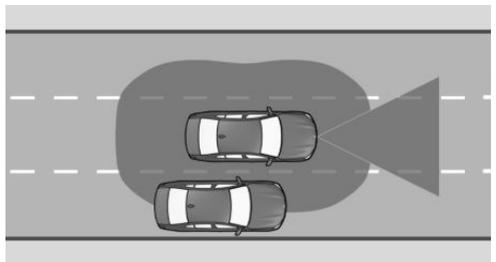
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow icon is also illuminated.

Side collision mitigation

Principle

The side-collision warning helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the space next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed and up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

The camera behind the windshield determines the lane boundary positions.

If, for instance, another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a blinking LED in the exterior mirror, a Check Control message and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, the system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Turning the side collision warning on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Side collision warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



The light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, if necessary, the system engages the active steering intervention to prevent a collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves or on narrow roads.
- ▶ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are not white.
- ▶ With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

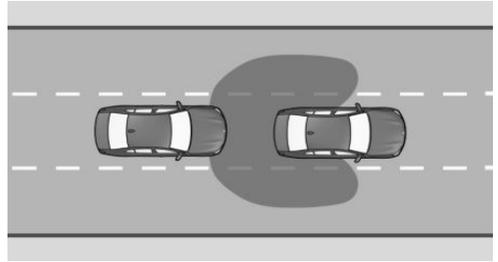
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear-end collision preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the rear-end collision preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- ▶ Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- ▶ Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

Turning the rear-end collision preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▶ When driving in reverse.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

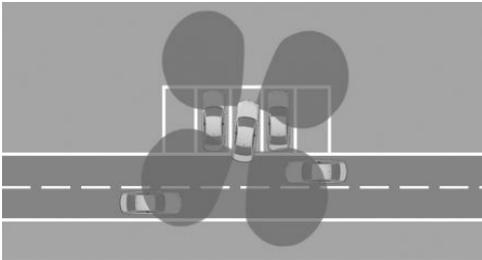
- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ The approaching vehicle is approaching slowly.

Cross traffic warning with braking function

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



The area behind to the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well.

The system indicates approaching road users.

In case of a risk of collision when driving in reverse, the system will provide assistance with an automatic brake intervention.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Turning on/turning off the cross traffic warning manually

The cross traffic warning and brake intervention can be turned on and off.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "CROSS TRAFFIC WARNING"
7. Select the desired setting.

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

If the system was activated on the control display, it is automatically turned on as soon as the Park Distance Control or a camera view is active and a selector lever position is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a gear position is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off in the following situations:

- ▶ When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- ▶ When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

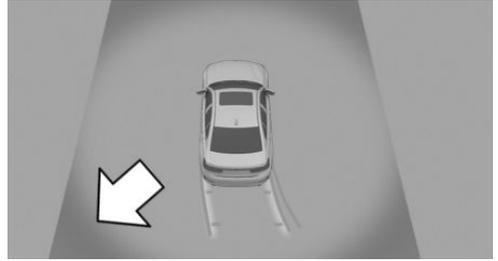
Visual warning

Light in the exterior mirror



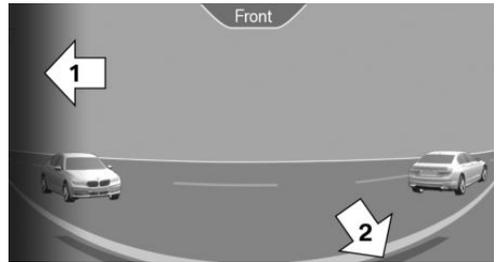
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving in reverse.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Depending on vehicle equipment: indicator in camera image



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or back is displayed in the camera image.

The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, a signal tone sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Functional limitations

The function can be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- ▶ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder stores brief video recordings of the vehicle surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic.

General information

There are various ways for storing video recordings:

- ▶ Automatic storage of the recording.
The function allows the documentation in the event of an accident or theft of the vehicle.
- ▶ Manual storage of the recording.
The function allows the documentation of traffic situations.

Cameras of the parking view are used, such as Panorama View.

Additionally, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- ▶ Date.
- ▶ Time.
- ▶ Vehicle speed.
- ▶ Global Positioning System coordinates.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with the respective regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▶ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- ▶ Privacy Policy was accepted.
- ▶ Recording type was selected.
- ▶ Recording time was selected.

Theft notification:

- ▶ The theft notification was activated in the Data Protection menu or in the Drive Recorder menu.
- ▶ Data transfer is activated.
- ▶ BMW app is installed on the mobile device.
- ▶ BMW app is linked with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▶ Privacy Policy was accepted.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before the first use of the recording function.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"

3. "Drive Recorder"
4. Accept Privacy Policy.
5. "Settings"
6. "Allow recording"
7. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording is stored automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident occurrence or theft.

- ▶ In case of accident:

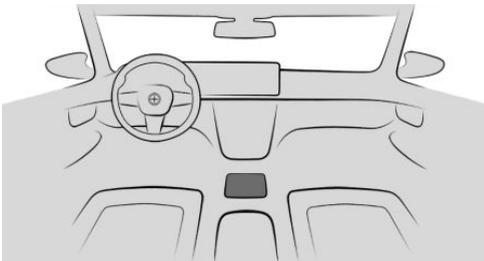
The system saves recordings made up to 30 seconds before and after the storage was triggered.
- ▶ In case of theft:

Depending on the selected setting, the system saves recordings made 5 to 20 seconds after storage was triggered.

When the alarm system is triggered, a message is sent to the BMW app and the video can be downloaded to a mobile device.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold this button.

Via iDrive

Start the recording:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

Stop the recording: "Stop recording".

The system saves recordings up to 30 seconds before and after storage was triggered.

Recording playback and administration

Stored video recordings can be played back, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only displayed on the Control Display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h. In some national-market versions, the video recording is only displayed if the parking brake is engaged or if the selector lever is in the P position.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recordings"
5. Select desired recording.
6. If necessary, select camera.

Settings

General information

Different settings can be made.

Recording type

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording time

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording on a mobile device

Principle

Depending on the equipment, video recordings can be stored directly on a mobile device, such as a smartphone or USB storage.

General information

The length of the video that can be stored depends on the available memory capacity on the mobile device.

Functional requirements

- Privacy Policy was accepted.
- Drive Recorder is activated.

To transfer recordings to a mobile device:

- Mobile device is connected to the vehicle via WLAN and Bluetooth® audio.
- BMW app is installed on the mobile device.
- BMW app is linked with the ConnectedDrive account.

Recording

The recording can be started and stopped manually.

Start the recording:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

Stop the recording: "Stop recording".

Cameras

Different cameras can be selected.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. "Camera selection"
6. Select desired camera.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, it may not be possible to store recordings if the damage on the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

In case of theft, the recording is only stored automatically when the anti-theft warning system has been triggered.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency braking.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation: brake booster.
- ▷ Rear-end collision preparation: detection of imminent rear-end collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

In an accident-critical situation, the following individual functions are active as required: automatic closing of windows except for a crack. Following a critical driving situation without accident, the system can be returned to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

In the event of an accident, PostCrash can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations.

General information

PostCrash can reduce the risk of another collision and subsequent consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- ▷ By pressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. The system recommends a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After starting the trip, the system is trained for the driver, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a break recommendation.

Break recommendation

Setting break recommendation

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.



1.  Press the button.
2. "Driver Assistance"
3. "Safety and warnings"
4. "why does this have a sub menu and all other systems have drop down options?"
5. Select the desired setting.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- ▷ When the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▷ When the road condition is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

Depending on the equipment, a camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver activity or the driver's direction of view.

General information

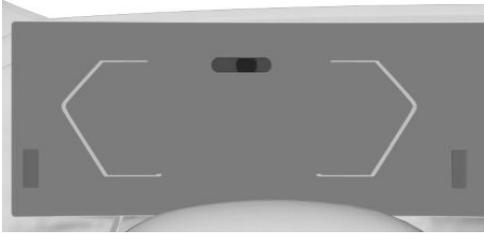
For support by assistance systems, the attention of the driver is analyzed by evaluating the head position and eye opening of the driver.

For full functionality, make sure that the range of vision of the Driver Attention Camera is not obstructed.

Additional information:

- ▷ Fatigue alert, refer to page 198.
- ▷ Steering Assistant with Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 220.

Overview



Depending on the equipment, the instrument cluster has up to 3 infrared light sources. Depending on the light conditions, they can be visible when the vehicle is in standby mode.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▶ When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- ▶ With sunglasses with high protection from infrared light.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Antilock Braking System ABS

Principle

The Antilock Braking System (ABS) prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steerability even during emergency braking, which increases the active driving safety.

ABS is ready after every time the drive-ready state is switched on.

Brake assistant

The Brake Assistant effects maximum braking assistance when the brake is applied quickly. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency braking. The advantages of the Antilock Braking System (ABS) are thereby utilized.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of emergency braking.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Cruise Control with distance control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly with brake actuation in critical situations.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake interventions on individual wheels.

General information

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Display

In the instrument cluster

"DSC OFF": display in the instrument cluster with limited Dynamic Stability Control.

Indicator/warning lights



Indicator light illuminates:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- ▷ "SPORT PLUS" is activated.



Indicator light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control controls the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control malfunction or initializing. No driving stabilization.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting for increased driving dynamics

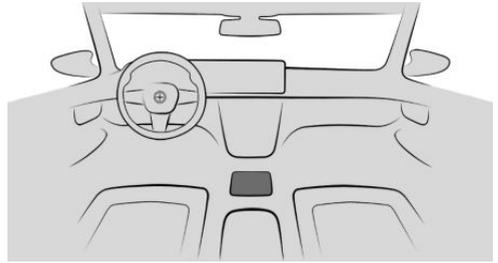
Principle

"SPORT PLUS": with this setting, the vehicle is set to an enhanced driving experience for dynamic driving.

The Dynamic Stability Control and thereby the driving stability are limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Activating/deactivating increased driving dynamics



1. Press the button.
2. "Switch mode"
3. "Sport Mode"
4. "Settings"
5. "Driving dynamics"
6. "SPORT PLUS"

Dynamic Stability Control is activated when changing to another drive mode.

"Sport Mode": the last setting applied to Dynamic Stability Control remains saved in the mode.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

"DSC OFF": display in the instrument cluster with increased driving dynamics.

Indicator/warning lights



The indicator light illuminates: increased driving dynamics activated.

Automatic program change

The increased driving dynamics will be deactivated automatically, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ When the distance control is activated.
- ▶ In case of a brake intervention by the assistance systems.
- ▶ The vehicle has a flat tire.

Drive-off support

Principle

The function supports driving off in certain situations on difficult ground, such as snow or sand.

General information

When driving off on difficult road conditions, such as snow or loose ground, the drive-off support provides the best possible traction. The function provides maximum drive power with adapted driving stability in the low speed range.

Activating/deactivating the drive-off support

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Drive-off support"
6. "Activate once" or "Deactivate"

The drive-off support remains active until it is deactivated or the driving mode is changed.

xDrive

Principle

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as Dy-

namic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and driving dynamics.

General information

xDrive variably distributes the driving power to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road condition.

Because of the needs-based use of the all-wheel-drive system, Efficient4x4 yields a reduction in consumption.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering support.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving mode, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

Integral Active Steering

Principle

The Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability of the vehicle and makes a more direct steering response possible.

General information

The Integral Active Steering is a combination of the variable steering ratio of the front axle and the rear axle steering.

The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. For instance, this results in a harmonious lane change.

In critical driving situations, the Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle through purposeful steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes, for instance in case of oversteering.

Setting

The system offers several different settings.

With the driving modes of the My Modes, the system can be set to comfortable or dynamic.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page [129](#).

Using tire chains

In order to guarantee free movement of the wheels when operating with tire chains, rear axle steering must be turned off when tire chains are mounted.

Additional information:

Rear axle steering during operation with tire chains, refer to page [312](#).

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.



Steering system may not be working.

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further at lower speeds. The response of the vehicle is more sensitive in higher speed ranges.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

Another warning occurs when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"

Adjusting the speed

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"

6. "Speed warning"
7. "Warning at:"
8. Select the desired setting.

Accept current speed as the speed warning

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Adopt current speed"

Speed control systems

Principle

The speed control systems provide support when driving.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the speed control systems include the following individual systems.

- ▶ Cruise control, refer to page 207.
- ▶ Distance control, refer to page 210.
- ▶ Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.
- ▶ Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 220.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the individual systems are enhanced with additional functions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Interrupt and continue speed control systems.
	Select the desired speed control system.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed.

Turning on/selecting speed control systems

-  Turn on: press the button.
-  Select: when the system active, press the button repeatedly until the desired speed control system is displayed in the toolbar in the instrument cluster.

Icon	Speed control system
	Cruise control.
	Distance control.
	Assisted Driving. Cruise control with distance control, Steering Assistant and lane guidance.
	Assisted Driving Plus. System for traffic queues.

The selected function is shown in green.

The function is displayed in white when the functional requirements are not met.

The function is displayed in gray when the function has malfunctioned.

Interrupting speed control systems automatically

Depending on the system, speed control systems are interrupted automatically, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ Depending on the system, when exiting selector lever position D to P, N or R.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control adjusts.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way down.

Interrupting speed control systems manually

- ▶  Press the button.
- ▶  Press button to select another speed control system.

Continuing speed control systems



Press the button.

Turning off speed control systems automatically

The speed control systems turn off automatically when the drive readiness is turned off.

Turning off speed control systems manually



Press and hold this button.

The speed control systems are turned off and the displays extinguish.

Adjusting speed values



Press the corresponding button repeatedly until the desired value is set.

- ▶ Press the corresponding button up to the resistance point to increase or decrease the set speed by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▶ Press the button past the resistance point to change the set speed by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster



A mark is displayed on the speedometer for the set speed.

- ▶ Green marking: system is active.
- ▶ Grey marking: system is interrupted.
- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

Cruise control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▶ On winding roads.
- ▶ In heavy traffic.
- ▶ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button **Function**

Turn last active speed control system on/off.

Interrupt and continue speed control systems.



Select the desired speed control system.



Store current speed.

Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.



Set speed.

Turning on the Cruise Control

In vehicles with distance control: change the mode of the Cruise Control to Cruise Control without distance control.

Additional information:

Distance control, refer to page [210](#).

In vehicles without distance control: turn on the Cruise Control with the buttons on the steering wheel.

-  If necessary, press the button.
-  If necessary, press the button repeatedly until the Cruise Control is selected.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as set speed.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

When the Cruise Control is turned on, the driving mode may change.

Turning the speed control system on/off

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page [205](#).

Setting the speed

Store/maintain speed



Press the button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

When the Speed Limit Assistant is not active, the current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:



Press the button.

Changing the speed

 Press the corresponding button until the set speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

Pressing the button to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

At the stored speed

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional deceleration or acceleration may occur.

 Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▶ When selecting another speed control system.

At the current speed

 Press the button to continue Cruise Control at the current speed.

Speed Limit Assistant: at the suggested speed

 When a speed is suggested, press the button to accept the Cruise Control at the suggested speed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▶ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▶ Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light



- ▶ Indicator light green: system is active.
- ▶ No indicator light: the system is turned off or interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

Distance control

Principle

With the distance control, a distance to a vehicle driving ahead can be adjusted in addition to the Cruise Control.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the button for the speed setting on the steering wheel.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Interrupt and continue speed control systems.
	Select the desired speed control system.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▶ Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Application range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Turning on Cruise Control with distance control

1.  If necessary, press the button.
2.  If necessary, press the button repeatedly until distance control is selected.

Cruise control with distance control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as set speed.

The selected distance to a vehicle driving ahead is maintained.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

When the distance control is turned on, the driving mode may change.

Setting the speed

The speed can be set with the buttons on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 207.

Interrupting Cruise control with distance control automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ When braking manually.
- ▶ Gear lever position D is disengaged.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- ▶ The Dynamic Stability Control adjusts.
- ▶ Driver's seat belt and driver's door are opened.
- ▶ The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.

- ▶ The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Turning the speed control system on/off

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page [205](#).

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional deceleration or acceleration may occur.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page [207](#).

Distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Adjusting the distance

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. "Distance"
8. Select the desired setting.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be adjusted so that the distance to the vehicle driving in front is automatically adjusted within the configured distance according to the traffic situation or the ambient conditions, for instance poor visibility.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. "Adjust distance based on conditions"

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Change over mode of the cruise control

Turning Cruise Control without distance control on or off:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "Driving settings"
 4. "Driver Assistance"
 5. "Driving"
 6. "Distance control"
 7. "Switch to Cruise Control"
- The setting is reset when the vehicle is parked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer



- ▶ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▶ Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▶ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Icon	Description
	Vehicle symbol white: No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Green icon: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected. Vehicle symbol flashes green: Vehicle in front drove off.

Icon	Description
	Symbol flashes gray: The prerequisites for the system to work are not met. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol flashes red and a signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Set speed

Depending on the equipment, some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Distance information



The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▶ Cruise control with distance control is turned off.
- ▶ Display in the Head-up Display selected. Head-Up Display, refer to page 157.
- ▶ Distance too short.
- ▶ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

Avoid passing

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the function assists in avoiding unintended passing on highways.

The system can be set to avoid passing on the slower lane.

The setting applies to speeds exceeding 50 mph/80 km/h.

If the set speed is significantly higher than the speed on the next lane, passing or overtaking may occur even when the function is activated.

At speeds below 50 mph/80 km/h, vehicles on highways are only passed with an adapted differential speed.

The driver can pass or accelerate at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal.

Turning the function on/off:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Distance control"
7. Depending on the national-market version:
 - ▷ "Avoid passing on the left"
 - ▷ "Avoid passing on the right"

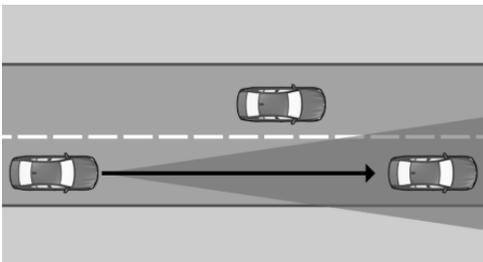
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 41.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 42.

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

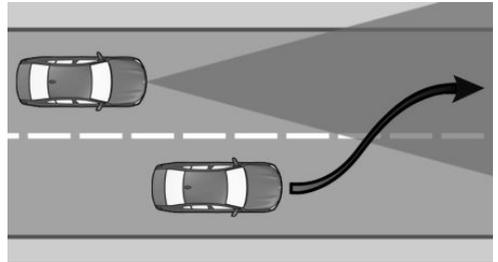
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

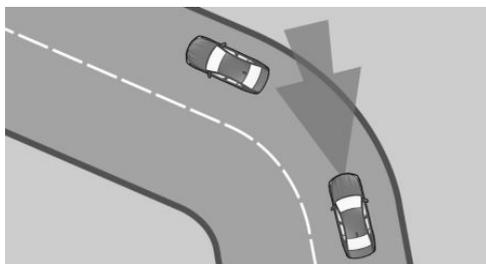
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



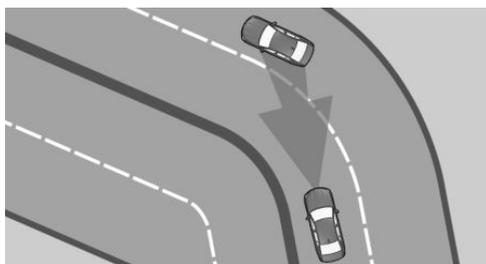
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is re-activated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▶ On steep uphill grades.
- ▶ In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▶ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▶ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

Assisted Driving

Principle

Assisted Driving enhances the distance control with a Steering Assistant with lane guidance. The system helps keep the vehicle in its lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Interrupt and continue speed control systems.
	Select the desired speed control system.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ Sufficiently wide curve radius.
- ▷ Drive in the center of the lane.
- ▷ Turn signal switched off.
- ▷ The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- ▷ Distance control is active.
- ▷ Safety belt on the driver's side fastened.
- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- ▷ Side-collision warning is active.

Turn on Assisted Driving

1.  If necessary, press the button.
2.  If necessary, press the button repeatedly until Assisted Driving is selected.

-  Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.
The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

-  Steering wheel symbol lights up green.
The system is active.

With the system turned on, Forward Collision Mitigation and Side Collision Warning will be active.

Interruption Assisted Driving automatically

The system interrupts the supporting steering movements automatically, for example in the following situations:

- ▶ At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▶ After releasing the steering wheel.
- ▶ With strong steering intervention.
- ▶ When leaving own lane.
- ▶ When the turn signal is switched on.
- ▶ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▶ If a lane boundary is not detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- ▶ The Cruise Control with distance control is interrupted.
- ▶ The safety belt on the driver's side is unfastened.



Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.
The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

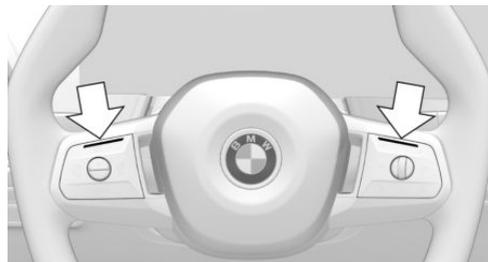
System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol blinks red, signal sounds: System is switching off.

Icon	Description
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Displays on the steering wheel



Depending on the equipment, the two LEDs above the keypads illuminate analog to the displays in the instrument cluster.

The steering wheel displays can be turned on/off as required.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"

6. "Light elements"
7. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Depending on the equipment, the system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 41.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 42.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- ▷ Driving with gloves.
- ▷ Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In construction areas.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- ▷ Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions in case of already detected vehicles and lane boundaries.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Lane Change Assistant also assists when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

General information

The system uses the Assisted Driving sensors.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

State laws differ and the use of this function may violate the law. Before use, check your state and local laws.

Additionally, the Assisted Driving notices apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The functional requirements for Assisted Driving are met.

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

- ▶ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.
- ▶ A vehicle has been detected at a sufficient distance behind your own vehicle since beginning the drive.
- ▶ Lane boundaries are detected.
- ▶ Maximum speed approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.
- ▶ The minimum speed is country-specific.

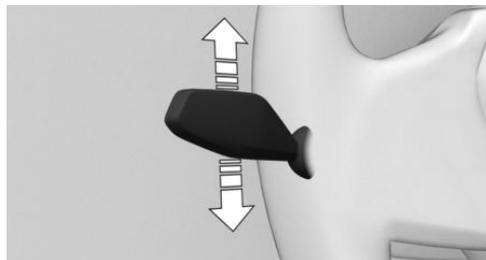
Turning on/turning off Automatic Lane Change Assistant

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Automatic Lane Change"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn signal lever in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly.

Supporting steering movement in the desired direction can be felt a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

System limits

The limits of the Assisted Driving system apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant

Principle

Assisted Driving Plus assists in traffic queues for vehicle control.

Supporting steering movements take place without the driver actively steering.

General information

The system uses the Assisted Driving sensors.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

State laws differ and the use of this function may violate the law. Before use, check your state and local laws.

Additionally, the Assisted Driving notices apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Functional requirements of Assisted Driving have been met and Assisted Driving and the LED displays on the steering wheel are active.

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

- ▶ The function is only available on certain street types, e.g. freeways.
- ▶ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.

- ▶ Sufficient lane width.
- ▶ Lane markings and a vehicle driving ahead are detected.
- ▶ Speed below approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- ▶ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the surrounding traffic.
- ▶ When traveling to countries outside of the country of origin of the vehicle, Assisted Driving Plus must be available in the respective country.

Turning Assisted Driving Plus on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Assisted Driving Plus"

Assisted Driving Plus is automatically offered when Assisted Driving is active and all functional requirements for Assisted Driving Plus are met.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

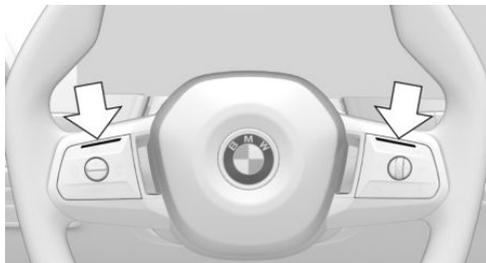
The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Indicator light white: system is ready.

Displays on the steering wheel



The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▶ Green: the system is active.
- ▶ Yellow: system will be interrupted.
Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
- ▶ Red: system will be deactivated.
Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

System limits

General information

The limits of the Assisted Driving system apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Driver Attention Camera

Always monitor the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera detects whether or not the driver is paying attention to the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▶ When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- ▶ With sunglasses with high protection from infrared light.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- ▶ Cruise control.
- ▶ Distance control.
- ▶ Assisted Driving.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

- "MENU"
- "Vehicle apps"
- "Driving settings"
- "Driver Assistance"
- "Driving"
- "Speed Limit Assistant"
- "Speed limits"
- Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
 - ▷ "Show anticipation": current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
 - ▷ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
 - ▷ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.
If necessary, other proactive comfort functions will be turned off.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 152.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a speed control system are activated.

Icon	Function
	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually to the active speed control system.

 When the SET icon is displayed, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted, whether the speed limit is exactly applied or with a tolerance.

General information

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be set up.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

- "MENU"
- "Vehicle apps"
- "Driving settings"
- "Driver Assistance"
- "Driving"
- "Speed Limit Assistant"
- Select the desired setting:

- ▶ "Adjust speed limits": set the tolerance for speed adjustments, which applies to all speed limits.
- ▶ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
- ▶ "Adjust speed limits": with activated additional speed adjustment, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied to the Cruise control with distance control.

Additional information:

- ▶ System limits of Speed Limit Info, refer to page 153.
- ▶ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 41.

Adapting the speed to the route

Principle

The system can be configured so that with active distance control, the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations as necessary:

- ▶ Before making turns.
- ▶ Before a roundabout.
- ▶ Before a curve.
- ▶ In front of an exit ramp on highways or highway-like roads.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Cruise Control, distance control and Assisted Driving notices apply.

Additional information:

- ▶ Cruise control, refer to page 207.
- ▶ Distance control, refer to page 210.
- ▶ Assisted Driving, refer to page 215.

Functional requirements

Depending on the situation, different functional requirements must be met:

- ▶ Cruise Control and distance control are activated.
- ▶ Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- ▶ With navigation system: guidance is activated.

The use of navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto may lead to functional limitations, for instance deviations with navigation instructions.

- ▶ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

Adapt speed automatically to route

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"

6. "Route and intersection assistant"
7. "Automatically adjust speed to route"

System limits

Depending on the national-market version or country in which the vehicle is currently being driven, the function may not be available.

The system does not respond at all or with limitations to the route ahead when the navigation system is unable to clearly identify the position of the vehicle.

The system is not available when driving with a trailer.

Additionally, the limits of the Cruise Control, distance control, Assisted Driving and Speed Limit Assistant systems apply.

Parking

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems provide support with assistance functions, sensors and different camera views when parking and maneuvering or driving in reverse.

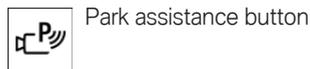
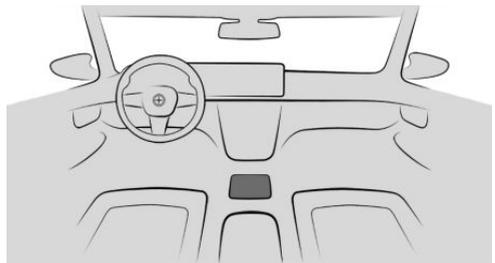
Additional information:

- ▶ Rearview camera, refer to page 230.
- ▶ Semi-automatic camera perspective, refer to page 230.
- ▶ Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 230.
- ▶ Side view, refer to page 231.
- ▶ 3D view, refer to page 231.
- ▶ Car wash view, refer to page 231.
- ▶ Panorama View, refer to page 232.
- ▶ Door opening angle, refer to page 232.
- ▶ Remote 3D View, refer to page 233.
- ▶ Park Distance Control, refer to page 234.
- ▶ Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 236.
- ▶ Drive-off monitoring, refer to page 237.
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 238.

- ▶ Maneuver Assistant, refer to page 244.
- ▶ Back-up Assistant, refer to page 247.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- ▶ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▶ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Top view cameras.
- ▶ Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Go to Park menu

Some parking assistance systems can be adjusted in the Park menu.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. Select the desired settings.

Display

Principle

The parking assistance systems view helps with parking and maneuvering by displaying the Park Distance Control and a variety of camera perspectives.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Depending on the national-market version, either the automatic or the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed.

Turning display on/off

General information

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With reverse

When drive readiness is switched on, the display is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

Via Parking Assistant button



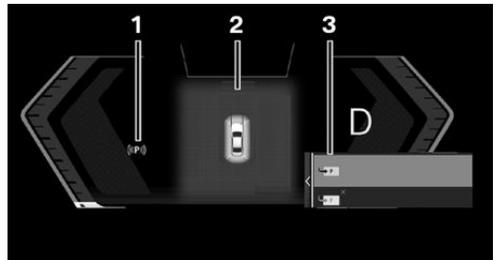
Press the button.

Via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Parking"

Display in the instrument cluster

The instrument cluster shows displays of some parking assistance systems such as Park Distance Control or Automatic Parking Assistant.



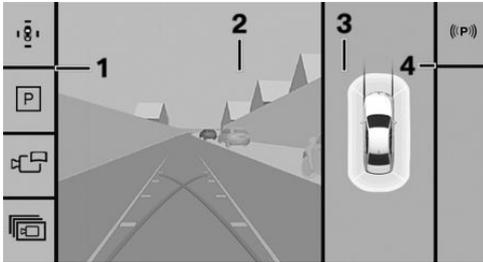
- 1 Status of parking assistance systems
- 2 Assisted View
- 3 Selection menu

Display on the Control Display

General information

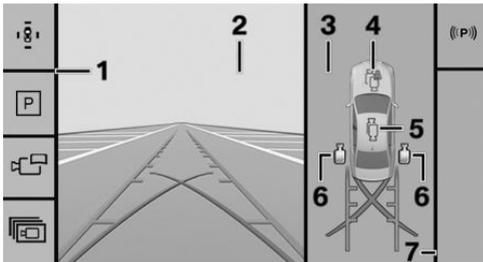
Depending on vehicle equipment and on the activated parking assistance system, the control display will vary.

Assistance view



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Selection window
- 4 Toolbar, right

Parking view



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Selection window
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Semi-automatic camera perspective
- 6 Side view
- 7 Toolbar, right

Toolbar, left

Different views and settings can be selected via the left toolbar depending on the equipment.

- ▷ "Parking view"

Depending on vehicle equipment, camera images or the Park Distance Control view are displayed.

- ▷ "Assist view"

A stylized view of the vehicle in top view is displayed.

- ▷ "Panorama view"

The cross traffic view is displayed.

- ▷ "More"

- ▷ "3D view"

A three-dimensional visualization is displayed.

- ▷ "Car wash view"

The display of your own lane can be turned on for easier driving into the car wash.

- ▷ "Camera cleaning"

If necessary, cleaning of the front camera and the rearview camera can be activated.

- ▷ "Settings"

Settings can be entered in the Park menu.

Toolbar, right

The Parking Assistant functions are displayed in the right toolbar.

- ▷ Status of the parking assistance systems.
- ▷ Available parking methods of the Automatic Parking Assistant.
- ▷ Functions of the Back-up Assistant.
- ▷ Functions of the Maneuver Assistant.
- ▷ Additional information in case of malfunctions.

Status of parking assistance systems

The status of the following parking assistance systems is displayed:

- ▷ Parking assistant.
- ▷ Memory Parking.
- ▷ Back-up Assistant.

The symbols are shown on the control display in the right toolbar and in the status area in the instrument cluster. In addition to the symbol, a message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Meaning
	<p>The icon indicates the following meanings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No search for parking assistance system offers. No other parking assistance systems available. Parking assistance systems have failed.
	<p>Search for parking assistance system offers is active.</p>
	<p>White: an available maneuver is selected but is not being performed. Functional requirements have not been met or the functions transfer has been completed.</p> <p>Green: parking assistance system is active. The functions are adopted depending on the system activated.</p>
	<p>Memory Parking records the maneuver to be stored.</p>

Additional displays

General information

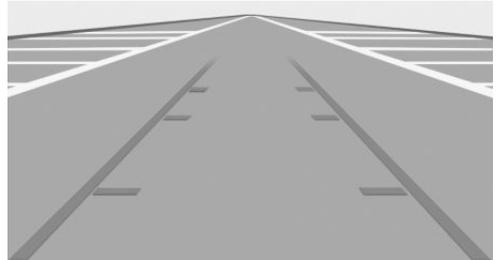
Additional displays can be shown in the camera image of the parking assistance systems to make parking and maneuvering easier.

Turning additional displays on/off

Several additional displays can be active at the same time.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Parking guide lines"
 - Pathway lines and turning circle lines are displayed.
 - ▷ "Obstacle marking"
 - The obstacles detected by Park Distance Control are displayed with markings.

Lanes



Lanes help estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The lines are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with lanes.

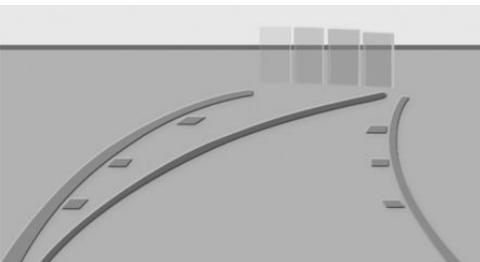
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Using lane lines and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown, such as an open door.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

Protruding cargo or roof rack systems can limit the detection range of the camera.

Malfunction

A camera failure is displayed on the Control Display.

The detection range of the failed camera is shown shaded on the control display.

Rearview camera

Principle

The rearview camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additional views can be shown on the display, e.g., lane and turning circle lines.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The trunk is fully closed.
- ▶ The camera area is clean and clear.

Deactivated rearview camera

When the rearview camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Semi-automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on the parking direction and engaged selector lever position, a fixed camera perspective is displayed with the areas in front of or behind the vehicle.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

General information

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to side protection.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a semi-automatic camera perspective to the rear. If necessary, select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will then be maintained for the current parking operation.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Side protection

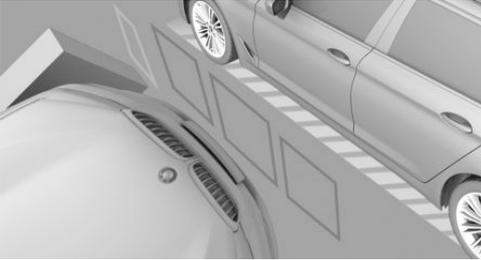
Principle

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed and warns of obstacles next to the vehicle.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

System limits

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Side view

Principle

The side view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or when other obstacles are on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

General information

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

3D view

Principle

When 3D view is selected, a circle is displayed on the control display.

Specified perspectives can be selected on the circle.

General information

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

Select another camera function to exit the function.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Car wash view

Principle

The car wash view assists when entering a car wash.

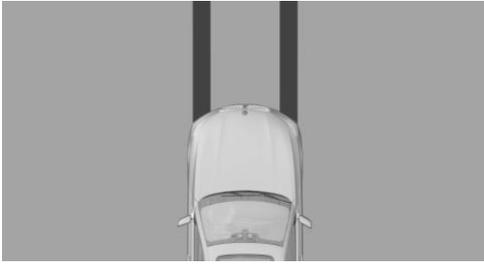
General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the car wash view on/off

1.  Press the button.
2. "More"
3. "Car wash view"

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The front camera and the rearview camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve the view.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the function can be used when driving forward or in reverse.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: front camera.

Turning the panoramic view on/off



1. Press the button.
2. "Panorama view"

Display



Yellow lines on the screen display identify the bumpers of your own vehicle.

Depending on the engaged gear lever position, the camera image of the rearview camera or front camera will be displayed.

Door opening angle

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the door opening angle indicator is displayed automatically.

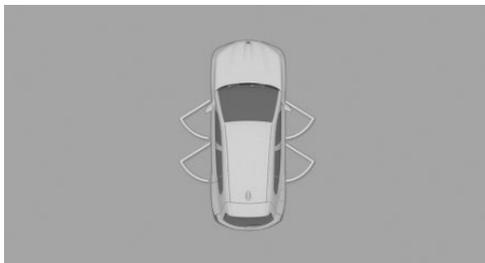
If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching road users.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Display



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

System limits

The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the control display does not overlap any other objects, it is necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The BMW app and the camera pictures in the parking view, such as automatic camera perspective, enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

General information

For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rearview camera.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated.
Data protection, refer to page 66.
- ▷ The BMW app must be installed on the mobile end device.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.
BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 67.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

The function can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

After the activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed in the BMW app.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door or the cargo area open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▷ With manually folded in exterior mirrors.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.

- ▷ The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▷ In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

In addition, the Park Distance Control view is shown in the Assisted View in the central display range of the instrument cluster.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When drive readiness is turned on when engaging selector lever position R.
- ▷ While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forward, the system turns off automatically as needed when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the system on/off manually



Press the button.

- ▶ On: the LED lights up.
- ▶ Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the rearview camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

Turning off the acoustic warning

Depending on the national-market version, the acoustic warning can be turned off for an active parking operation.

 After starting the parking operation, press the icon in the status field of the control display.

The acoustic warning will be turned on again automatically for the next drive.

Visual warning

General information

The approach to an object is displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

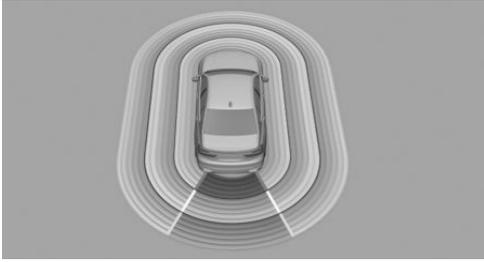
The detection range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

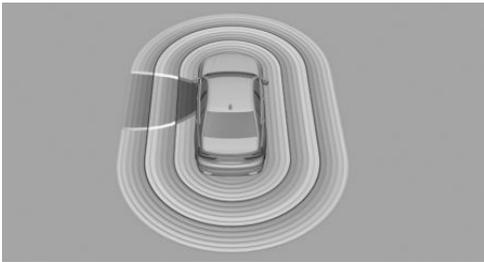
When equipped with cross traffic warning: depending on vehicle equipment, a warning is also shown for vehicles approaching at the rear and front from the side.

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

View behind vehicle



View next to vehicle



Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Gray marks, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- ▶ No marks, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

System limits

General information

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the side markings will be hidden after a certain period of time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction



An icon is displayed on the control display.

The detection range of the sensors is not displayed on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control malfunction. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention. No emergency braking is performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning off Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily turned off on the control display.

1. "Obstacle detected. Emergency braking."
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

The system will be turned on again automatically for the next drive.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"

5. "Parking"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display



As soon as the system detects an obstacle, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Drive-off monitoring

Principle

In case of a risk of collision, the drive-off monitoring reduces the drive power at drive-off.

General information

When obstacles are detected in close range in front of the vehicle, the acceleration will be reduced. If necessary, this permits timely manual braking.

When obstacles are detected behind the vehicle, the system will brake.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Gear lever position D, B or R is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Obstacles are detected in close range in front of or behind the vehicle.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal is heavily applied, nearly to the end point.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal is immediately applied after engaging the selector lever position and obstacle detection.

Turning drive-off monitoring on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Start monitoring"
7. "Start monitoring"

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically turned on again at the next drive.

Canceling reduced drive power

The reduction of the drive power is canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ The accelerator pedal is released.
- ▷ A specific distance has been traveled.
- ▷ After a specific period of time has elapsed.
- ▷ After the accelerator pedal has been depressed completely twice.

Display



As soon as the system detects an obstacle, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Parking Assistant supports driving into and driving out of parallel and perpendicular parking spaces.

The Automatic Parking Assistant Professional increases the comfort and range of uses of the Automatic Parking Assistant. In addition to the parking methods of the Automatic Parking Assistant, parking in parking spaces that are marked with lines is possible.

Vehicle equipment and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, such as due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software update. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, can be obtained from a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center.

Additional information:

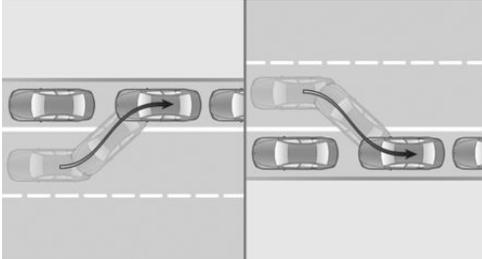
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

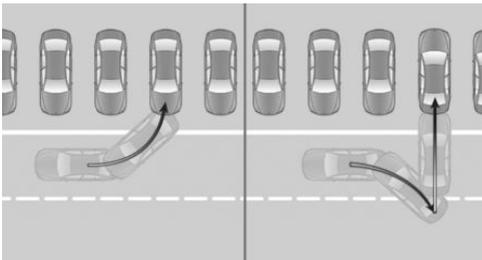
Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Parking methods

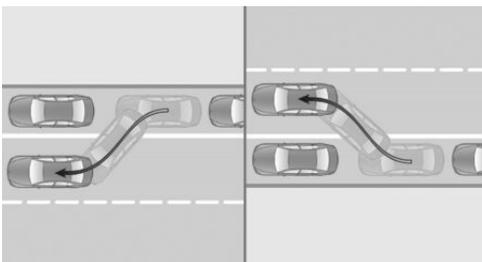
The system supports the following functions:



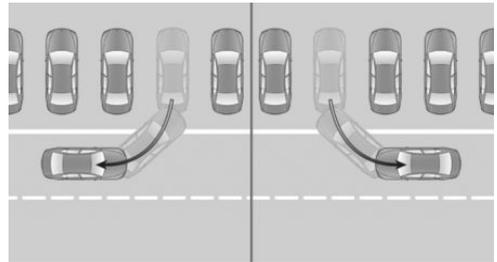
Reverse parking parallel to road, parallel parking.



Reverse or forward parking perpendicular to the road, perpendicular parking.



Driving out of parallel parking spaces.



Driving out of perpendicular parking spaces.

Operation

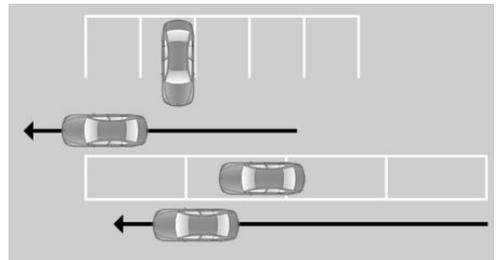
The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Turning on.
- ▷ Parking.
- ▷ Driving out of parking spaces.

Parking space search is always active when the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

When the system is active, the status of the system and necessary instructions are displayed.



The Automatic Parking Assistant Professional orientates itself on the following limits when searching for a parking space:

- ▷ Bordering objects.
- ▷ Parking space lines.
- ▷ Curbs.

Parking operation

The system calculates the best possible option for driving in or out of parking spaces with parking lines and takes control of the following functions while parking:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Acceleration and braking.
- ▷ Changing gears.

The parking operation is automatic.

When driving out of parallel parking spaces, the vehicle maneuvers automatically until it reaches a position where it can be driven out of the parking space without further steering movements.

When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, the vehicle is maneuvered out of the parking space to enable continued driving in the desired direction.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Automatic Parking Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

The Automatic Parking Assistant Professional is additionally controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Exterior mirror camera.
- ▷ Rearview camera.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- ▷ Minimum length of adjoining objects approx. 3 ft/1 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

Parking lines:

Parking space must be clearly marked with lines.

Parking operation

- Doors and cargo area are closed.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Leaving parking spaces

- The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Parking Assistant and an object is detected in the surrounding area of the vehicle.
- The vehicle was manually parked in reverse and objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle are detected. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than your vehicle.

Turning the Automatic Parking Assistant on/off

Via Parking Assistant button



Press the button.

The current status of the parking assistance systems is displayed.

With reverse

Engage selector lever position R.

The current status of the parking assistance systems is displayed.

Via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Parking"

The current status of the parking assistance systems is displayed.

Displays

Parking methods

The sequence of the displayed icons corresponds to the prioritized parking option.

The direction of the arrow changes for the icons for parking methods for driving out of a parking space.

Icon	Meaning
	Reverse lengthwise parking, right.
	Reverse lengthwise parking, left.
	Reverse perpendicular parking.
	Forward perpendicular parking.

Turning parking operation display on/off

When the Automatic Parking Assistant is active, the parking operation is displayed in the camera image on the control display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Show parking spaces/driving paths"

Turning the signal tone on/off

The signal tone for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Sound when available"

Signal tone of Park Distance Control

Depending on national-market version, an intermittent tone for Park Distance Control sounds during an automatic parking operation.

A continuous tone will sound when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm.

Parking space search

- ▷ Parking space search is always active when driving straight forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m to parked vehicles.
- ▷ ((P)) The Automatic Parking Assistant is switched on and parking space search is activated. Search for suitable parking spaces.
- ▷ Suitable parking spaces are displayed and an acoustic signal sounds.
- ▷ Different symbols are shown on the control display for selecting the parking method.

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. Press the  button or engage reverse gear.
The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
((P)) Parking space search is activated.
The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.
2. On the control display: select an offered parking operation. You can switch to another parking operation as needed.
In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking operation with the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.
 Green: the system takes control of the parking operation.
3. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.
The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.
At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Driving out of a parking space using the parking assistant

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

3. On the control display: select the desired parking method.

In the instrument cluster: select suggested parking method with the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

 Green: the system takes control of maneuvering.

The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.

5. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of the parking space and drive off as usual.

The Automatic Parking Assistant is turned off automatically.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step on the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Automatic Parking Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▶ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▶ While lightly pressing the accelerator pedal and simultaneously moving the steering wheel.
- ▶ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▶ When the brake pedal is pressed for longer periods when vehicle is at a standstill.
- ▶ When setting the parking brake.
- ▶ When unfastening the driver's safety belt.
- ▶ With open cargo area.
- ▶ With open hood.
- ▶ With the doors open.
- ▶ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▶ When changing over to another function on the Control Display.
- ▶ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▶ On snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▶ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▶ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- ▶ When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- ▶ With insufficient distances, which are indicated by the Park Distance Control.
- ▶ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Continue the parking operation

If parking or leaving a parking space has been interrupted, the operation can be continued, if needed.

Turn the Automatic Parking Assistant on again and follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ For diagonal parking spaces.
- ▶ Automatic Parking Assistant: for parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- ▶ For special parking spaces, such as pay parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, coin parking or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▶ On slippery ground.
- ▶ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▶ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▶ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.

- ▶ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- ▶ Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant has malfunctioned. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maneuver Assistant

Principle

The Maneuver Assistant provides support for recurring parking and maneuvering situations.

Parking and maneuvering operations can be recorded and then carried out automatically by the system.

Vehicle equipment and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, such as due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software update. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, can be obtained from a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

A recurring maneuver is driven manually and thereby recorded.

When the vehicle reaches the activation area for the distance covered by the stored maneuver, the maneuver can be activated on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

After the activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and carries out the maneuver automatically.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

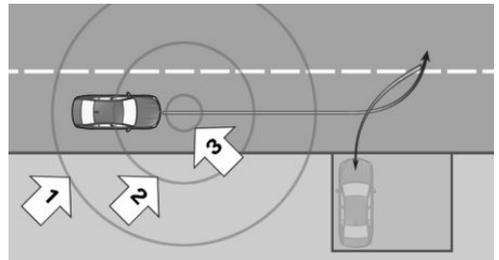
Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Detection range



The detection range for a maneuver is divided into the following areas:

- ▶ Proximity range, arrow 1: the system will begin with the localization in the background within a range of approx. 26 ft/8 m around the distance covered of a recorded maneuver.
- ▶  Close range, arrow 2: in a range of approx. 6 ft/2 m around the distance covered, the stored maneuver can be displayed on the control display. A manual approach is thereby possible up to the activation range, arrow 3.
- ▶  Activation range, arrow 3: the maneuver on the control display can be activated within a range of approx. 3.5 ft/1 m. After the activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and carries out the maneuver automatically.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors and cameras:

- ▶ Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▶ Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- ▶ Front camera.
- ▶ Top view cameras.
- ▶ Rearview camera.

Recording maneuver

General information

Up to ten maneuvers can be recorded at different locations.

Up to four overlapping maneuvers can be recorded.

Identical maneuvers under different ambient conditions can be recorded, such as light conditions.

For each maneuver, a maximum distance covered of 656 ft/200 m is possible.

In total, a distance covered of approx. 1,969 ft/600 m distributed to the ten possible maneuvers can be recorded.

Maneuvers with a distance covered of less than 20 ft/6 m cannot be recorded.

Recording maneuver

1. Drive the vehicle to the starting point from which a maneuver must be recorded and stop.
2.  Press the button.
3.  "Record new path"
4. Drive the vehicle to the desired end position.

 The maneuver is recorded.

When recording a route, do not drive faster than 9 mph/15 km/h.

While recording, the distance covered will be displayed.

When the maximum distance covered or the maximum speed is reached, a message will be displayed and a signal tone will sound.

5. With a stationary vehicle: "Save recording"
6. "Name:"
7. "Save recording"

If necessary, enter the desired name for the recorded maneuver.

Do not move the vehicle until the recording has been stored.

Performing stored maneuver

1. Drive the vehicle into the activation range and stop. The control display and instrument cluster indicate that a stored maneuver can be activated.
2.  : activate stored maneuver.

 Green: after activation, the system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically. If applicable, follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant manually

The vehicle can be controlled manually during an active maneuver by taking the following actions:

- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step on the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Maneuver Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When lightly pressing the accelerator pedal and slightly moving the steering wheel at the same time.
- ▷ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▷ When the driver's safety belt is not fastened.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With open hood.
- ▷ With the doors open.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▷ When the system limits of the ultrasonic sensors and cameras are reached.
- ▷ When changing over to another function on the Control Display.
- ▷ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▷ In case of obstacles.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▷ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.

In the event of an automatic cancellation of the system, the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop and selector lever position P is engaged.

An interrupted maneuver can be continued, if needed. Turn the Maneuver Assistant on again and follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

Editing stored maneuvers

Individual or all maneuvers can be deleted or renamed.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking"
6. "Recorded paths"
7. Select the desired setting.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system does not provide support when towing a trailer.

System limits can cause functional limitations, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ With poor GPS reception.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like light conditions or weather.
- ▷ In case of recorded maneuvers where the system minimum distance to objects cannot be maintained.

Back-up assistant

Principle

The Back-up Assistant assists when driving in reverse, for instance when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

Vehicle equipment and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, such as due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software update. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, can be obtained from a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven back with automated steering.

The system takes over the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

Back-up Assistant: a maximum of 164 ft/50 m are stored.

Back-up Assistant Professional: a maximum of 656 ft/200 m are stored.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- ▷ To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Back-up Assistant Professional: sufficiently bright light conditions on the saved route.
- ▷ Back-up Assistant Professional: the cameras on the vehicle must be clean and clear.

Driving back with automated steering

1. Turn on drive-ready state.



2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

3.  "Start back-up Assistant"

The length of the distance covered is displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

If applicable, follow the instructions on the control display or in the instrument cluster.

4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

 Green: the system takes control of steering.

When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.

5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle, such as by shifting to a forward gear.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

 "Cancel"

Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▶ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▶ When shifting from reverse to another selector lever position.
- ▶ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▶ After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.

- ▶ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▶ In case of a slippery surface.
- ▶ When the vehicle is rolling, such as on a slope.
- ▶ In case of changed ambient conditions.
- ▶ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

System limits

- ▶ The maximum speed when driving in reverse is limited to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
A warning occurs at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.
If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function will be canceled.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving back on the stored distance covered. For example, this includes the following factors:

- ▶ Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- ▶ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- ▶ Road characteristics, such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- ▶ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.
- ▶ Back-up Assistant Professional: for changed light conditions.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its application range and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Two-axle ride level control

Principle

Air suspension ensures best possible driving comfort under all load conditions. Due to a variable adjustment of the front and rear axles, the damping is adjusted to the vehicle state.

General information

Regardless of the load, the vehicle will be maintained at the configured vehicle level.

Depending on the driving situation, the vehicle level can be set to different levels:

- ▷ Normal level: for normal road condition.
- ▷ Elevated level: for poor road conditions or for light terrain at reduced speed.

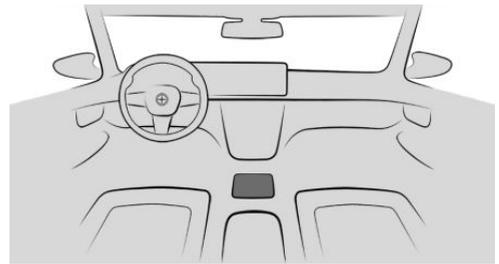
Safety information

Warning

Adjusting the vehicle height may result in trapped body parts or damaged vehicle parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When adjusting the vehicle height, make sure that the areas of movement around the vehicle and at the wheel housing are free.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Self-leveling suspension

Display

- ▷ LED off: normal level.
- ▷ LED flashes: level is being adjusted.
- ▷ LED lit: raised level.
- ▷ LED flashes rapidly: level adjustment not possible.

Functional requirement

Level adjustment takes place when all doors are closed.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorber settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the My Modes.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page [129](#).

Adjusting the level manually



Press the button.

In the low speed range, the vehicle is raised to the raised level with a press of the button.

Adjusting the level automatically

The vehicle will lower in the following situations:

- ▷ In driving mode: "Sport Mode".
- ▷ At higher speeds.

When a set vehicle level is exited due to the speed, the vehicle level will be adjusted according to the selected driving mode.

Activating/deactivating self-leveling suspension

Deactivate system:



Press and hold the button for approx. 7 seconds, until the LED flashes rapidly.

To activate system:



Press the button and hold for approx. 7 seconds, then release.

Long periods when vehicle is parked

During long periods when the vehicle is parked, it can lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

When the drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Depending on the state of the vehicle, raising to normal level may take several minutes.

System limits

- ▷ It is not possible to change the level during sporty driving.
- ▷ It may not be possible to change the level if the axles are limited.
- ▷ It may only be possible to raise the vehicle level in the drive-ready state.
- ▷ If the state of charge of the vehicle battery is too low, a level change may not be possible.
- ▷ If level adjustment is activated frequently in quick succession, the system switches off to prevent overheating and is temporarily unavailable or operates with a delay. Let the system cool down, if needed.
- ▷ If the payload is increased, the highest driving level may be disabled or automatically exited in order to protect the system.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

In case of a malfunction, the vehicle will have changed handling characteristics or a noticeably reduced driving comfort.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

Electric motor sound

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the electric motor sound can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "IconicSounds"
6. Select the desired setting.

Climate control

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Air conditioning control

Overview

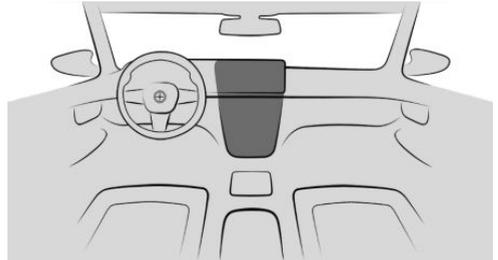
Functions via Climate control menu

Icon	Function
	AUTO program.
	Temperature.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.

Icon	Function
	SYNC program.
	Panel heating.
	Seat and armrest heating, refer to page 114.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 114.
	Steering wheel heating, refer to page 113.

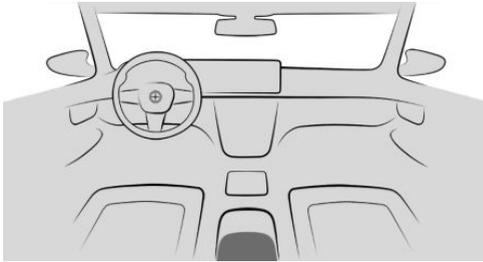
The functions can also be operated via voice, such as Temperature.

Buttons, automatic climate control



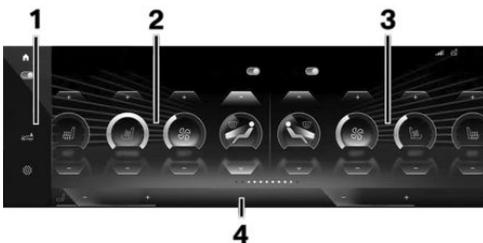
Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear automatic climate control



Icon	Function
	AUTO program.
	Temperature.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	Seat and armrest heating, refer to page 114. Panel heating.

Display in the display



- 1 Toolbar
- 2 Climate control functions, driver's side

- 3 Climate control functions, passenger's side
- 4 Climate control bar

Locking the rear automatic climate control operating elements

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. "Lock rear climate control"

Climate control menu

General information

In the Climate control menu, climate control functions can be set individually.

Depending on the equipment, the following climate control functions can be accessed via the Climate control menu, for instance:

- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Panel heating.
- ▷ Seat and armrest heating.
- ▷ Active seat ventilation.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating

Go to climate control functions

Via climate control bar:

"CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.

or:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "All climate functions"
3. Select the desired setting.

The complete air conditioning system is turned on/off with the last settings.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Turning rear automatic climate control on/off

Functional requirements

- ▷ Automatic climate control is turned on.
- ▷ Defrost function is deactivated.

Turning the system on/off via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. Activate "Rear climate control".

The rear automatic climate control can be activated with standard setting for temperature and AUTO program:

"Activate with default settings"

Turning on the system with the button

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.

Turning off the system with the button



Press and hold the bottom of the button.

AUTO program

Principle

The AUTO program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the desired temperature and individual settings.

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the AUTO program provides the best possible settings for climate control functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy and the desired temperature setting:

- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Panel heating.
- ▷ Seat and armrest heating.
- ▷ Active seat ventilation.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating

The AUTO program is started automatically at each vehicle start.

The AUTO program takes the seat occupancy into account to ensure energy-efficient control.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

Turning AUTO program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Automatic program"
3. Select the desired setting.

Rear automatic climate control:



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Setting the intensity

When the AUTO program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions can be individually adjusted.

Each climate control function has multiple levels that can be adjusted individually. Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

Example for function

When the AUTO program is turned on, the intensity of the seat heating can be adjusted:

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2.  seat heating.
3. Select desired setting, for example, "HIGH".

The individually selected settings of the climate control functions are stored and automatically set up again, such as after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator in the climate control bar informs of the temperature difference between configured desired temperature and current interior temperature.

- ▶ The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating or cooling.
- ▶ The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active climate control functions such as seat heating are displayed as icons in the climate control bar.

Active climate control functions are highlighted in color in the climate control menu.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

General information

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Setting the temperature

The temperature can be set individually for driver and front passenger in the air conditioning bar.



Set the desired temperature:

- ▶  Raising the temperature.
- ▶  Lower temperature.

Setting the rear automatic climate control temperature

Using the button:



Press the upper or lower button side to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. Set the desired temperature.

Setting the footwell temperature

General information

The air temperature in the footwell can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Setting the footwell temperature

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. "Temperature adjustment for footwell"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The function enables a quick and intense cooling of the interior.

General information

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Rear automatic climate control:

The function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC program is turned on.

When the SYNC program is turned off, the function is turned off in the rear to reach maximum performance in front.

Functional requirement

The function is available with outside temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready or standby state switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "MAX A/C"
3. Select the desired setting.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. Open the vents.

Rear automatic climate control:



Press the button.

The button LED lights up when maximum cooling is turned on.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

General information

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

When the air recirculation is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

In the automatic recirculated-air control, outside air is drawn in or the interior air is circulated, depending on the outside air quality.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. Select the desired setting in the toolbar:
 - ▷ "Air recirculation"
 - ▷ "Fresh air"
 - ▷ "Auto air recirculation"

The current operating mode is displayed in the toolbar.

Depending on the equipment, air recirculation will turn off automatically depending on the ambient conditions to prevent window condensation.

Air flow

General information

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air flow

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2.  Air flow.
3. Select the desired setting.

The level of the selected air flow is displayed.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Rear automatic climate control:



Pressing the upper or lower side of the button repeatedly: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate control display.

Air distribution settings

General information

The air distribution can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air distribution

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2.  Air distribution.
3. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is displayed.

Rear automatic climate control:



Pressing the upper or lower side of the button. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

SYNC program

Principle

When the SYNC program is activated, the settings for the driver's side can be transferred to the passenger's side and to the rear.

General information

The following settings can be transferred:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO program.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "SYNC"

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

General information

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and the front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the AUTO program to utilize the advantages of the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

When the defrost function is turned on, the rear automatic climate control is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

Turning the defrost function on/off



Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Rear window defroster

Principle

With the rear window defroster, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

Functional requirement

The drive-ready or standby state is turned on.

Turning the rear window defroster on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

If pre-conditioning is turned on, the rear window defroster is activated as needed.

Panel heating

Principle

The interior is quickly and energy efficiently heated with radiant heat.

General information

The elements of the panel heating are integrated in the doors, the glove compartment lid and in the lower area of the instrument panel.

The heat is supplied without direct contact to the heated surface.

The set desired temperature heats the surfaces more or less.

Setting the panel heating

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. Panel heating.
3. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is displayed on the control display.

Rear automatic climate control:



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Ventilation

Principle

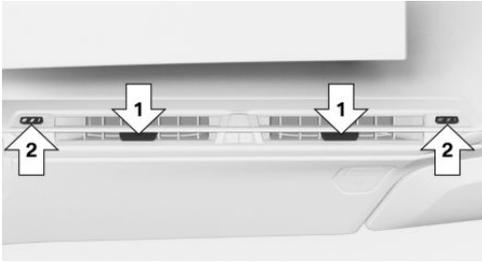
The ventilation system offers individual ranges of adjustment for direct or indirect ventilation to optimize the air flows in the vehicle.

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

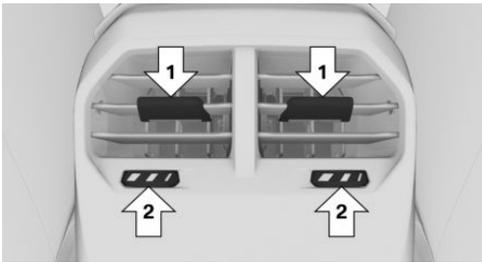
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for the variable adjustment of the air flow on the vents, arrows 2.

Ventilation in the rear



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emission tested passenger compartment.
- ▷ Interior filter.
- ▷ Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- ▷ Stationary climate control.
- ▷ Automatic recirculated-air control.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- ▷ Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- ▷ Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- ▷ Microbial particles and allergens are filtered.

Pre-conditioning

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the vehicle interior to a comfortable temperature prior to starting the trip depending on the inside and outside temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

General information

The pre-conditioning can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

Depending on the equipment, the following climate control functions are controlled automatically:

- ▷ Seat and armrest heating.
- ▷ Panel heating.
- ▷ Active seat ventilation.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating
- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Mirror heating.

The air automatically exits through the air vents to the windshield, the side windows, the upper body area and into the footwell.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 30 minutes or when the drive-ready state is activated.

If pre-conditioning is used during the charging process, less air conditioning capacity will be required while driving. This optimizes the range.

To ensure the minimum range of the vehicle, the pre-conditioning may be automatically switched off, for instance after repeated activation or due to an insufficient state of charge of the high-voltage battery. After turning off due to an insufficient state of charge, charge the high-voltage battery. The pre-conditioning is then available again.

The interior air conditioning can continue to run even if the drive-ready state is switched off and the vehicle is not locked. This feature provides improved comfort at very high or low outside temperatures when making brief stops during a trip. Depending on the air conditioning setting selected, the air conditioning can stop after a maximum of 15 minutes or by locking the vehicle.

Condensation may leak below the vehicle while the air conditioning is running.

Functional requirements

- ▶ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- ▶ The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or a charging cable is connected.

If the high-voltage battery is heavily discharged, it can take some time after connecting the charging cable, until the pre-conditioning will be functional.

- ▶ Time and date are set correctly.
- ▶ The ventilation air vents are open.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

Turning on/turning off via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. Select the desired setting.

Climate control for departure time

General information

Departure times can be set with time and day of the week.

The switch-on point is determined automatically based on the temperature.

On the desired weekdays, the system will be turned on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Pre-conditioning will be turned off automatically a few minutes after the set departure time.

Setting the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the desired departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

To turn on the pre-conditioning prior to a departure time, the respective departure time must be activated beforehand.

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Pre-condition for departure time"

Activate with BMW app

An appropriate BMW app with remote function can be used to turn on the pre-conditioning directly or via a preset departure time.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage door openers, alarm systems or locking systems.

General information

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to three different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of

damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

 If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- ▶ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▶ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

A manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▶ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▶ LED, arrow 2.
- ▶ Hand-held transmitter of the remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirement

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

Programming individual buttons

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Turn on standby state.
3. Select desired button on the interior mirror:
 - ▶ Program available button:
Press the button.
 - ▶ Program already assigned button:
Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.

4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can illuminate in different ways:
 - ▶ The LED lights up green: programming completed.
Release button.
 - ▶ The LED flashes green rapidly: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

Press and hold the button on the interior mirror for approx. 2 seconds. Perform this procedure three times.

If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for rolling code radio systems.

- ▶ LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.
Repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the remote-controlled system, such as on the garage door.

You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.

Press and hold the desired button of the remote-controlled system within range until the function is triggered.

The LED on the interior mirror is continuously illuminated green during the transmission of the radio signal.

Deleting a button assignment

The button assignment cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Shift it back to the desired position.

Folding the sun visor in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a danger of damage to property. In the case of a discharged vehicle battery, contact a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console



A socket is located between the smartphone tray and the cup holders. Detach the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

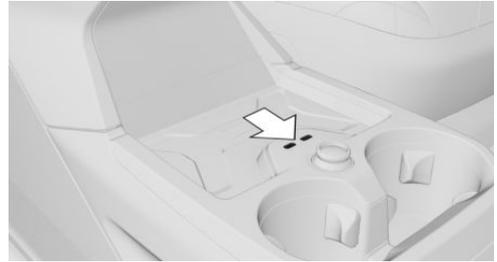
General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

In the center console



Two USB ports are located in the center console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

BMW Travel & Comfort System

General information

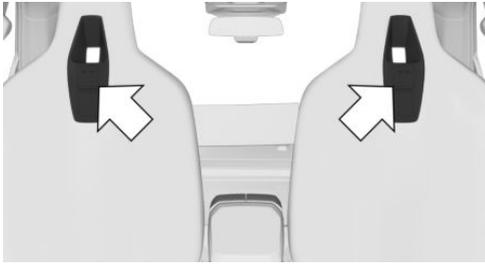
USB ports and fixtures for attaching optional accessories, for instance coat hooks, are located on the backrests of the front seats.

Properties of the USB ports:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging of mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



The fixtures are located behind the marked covers.

Installing special accessories

1. Slide the cover down.



2. Install the special accessories, refer to Installation Instructions.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

General information

Quick charging functions are supported depending on the mobile device.

The integrated fan permits cooling of the device to be charged.

When inserting the device to be charged, ensure that there are no objects between the device to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

() The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

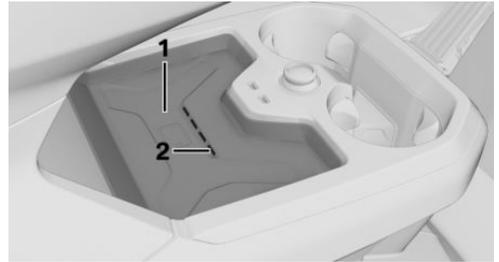
Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



- 1 Storage area
- 2 Fan

Functional requirements

- ▶ The device to be charged must be certified according to the Qi standard.
- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Charging function is turned on.

- ▷ The mobile phone cannot exceed a maximum size of approx. 6.69 x 3.34 x 0.7 in/170 x 85 x 18 mm.
- ▷ Use only protective sleeves and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- ▷ The rubber mat is located in the storage compartment.
- ▷ The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The mobile phone display is pointing upwards.

Turning the charging function on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Wireless charging"

Inserting the mobile phone

Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.

Forgotten warning

General information

A warning can be given if a Qi-certified mobile phone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating forgotten warning function

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charging process may be reduced or temporarily interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ Due to excessive temperatures on the surface of the tray and mobile phone.
- ▷ When there are objects between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ By settings on the mobile phone, for instance for charging. Follow the relevant instructions control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

Interior camera

Principle

The interior camera can be used to take pictures from the vehicle interior.

General information

The interior camera can provide the following functions:

- ▷ Snapshot.
Photos can be taken, saved, and displayed.
- ▷ Remote Inside View.
The vehicle interior can be recorded with a BMW app.
- ▷ Anti-theft recorder.
When the alarm system is triggered, the vehicle interior will be recorded automatically, which can be displayed using a BMW app.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using photos and video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with the respective regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or

country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other users and occupants of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Data transfer and data storage

The data transfer and data storage of the recordings depends on the recording function.

Snapshot:

- ▷ Data transfer to a mobile device, connection to the vehicle via WLAN.
- ▷ Data is stored in the vehicle, assigned to the BMW ID or a driver profile.

Remote Inside View:

- ▷ Data transfer with the BMW app to a mobile device, connection with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Data storage occurs in the BMW app and after the data transfer in the mobile device.

Anti-theft recorder:

- ▷ Data transfer with the BMW app to a mobile device, connection with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Data is stored in the vehicle and after the data transfer in the mobile device.

More information on the scope and content of data processing is available on the Internet in the ConnectedDrive privacy notices/service descriptions.

Functional requirements

Snapshot:

- ▷ Privacy Policy accepted.
Data protection, refer to page 66.
- ▷ The camera is activated.

To transfer recordings to mobile devices:

- ▷ Data transfer is activated.
- ▷ Mobile device is connected to the vehicle via WLAN.

Remote Inside View/Anti-theft recorder:

- ▷ Privacy Policy accepted.
- ▷ BMW app is installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ BMW app is linked with the ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Vehicle is parked and locked.

Ensure that the faces of occupants are visible and are not partially or completely covered, for instance by face masks.

Overview



The interior camera is located on the headliner.

Additional information:

Around the headliner, refer to page 39.

Activating/deactivating interior camera

Prior to the first use of the interior camera, the recording function and, if necessary, data transfer must be activated. To do this, confirm the query on the control display.

Follow applicable legal regulations.

The recording function or data transfer can be deactivated or activated.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Snapshot"

4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Snapshot

Recording mode

Recording mode	Function
"Single shot"	Shortly after triggering, a photo will be taken.
"Smile"	When the system detects a smile, a picture will be taken.
"Self-timer"	After the timer has expired, a photo will be taken.
"Burst mode"	Shortly after triggering, a series of pictures will be taken.

Take picture

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Snapshot"
4. "Photo"
5. Select desired recording mode.
6. Trigger recording.

Depending on the selected recording mode, the recording occurs shortly after triggering, when a smile is recognized or upon expiration of the timer.

For burst shots, the series of pictures will be displayed as a preview.

Displaying and managing recordings

Stored recordings can be displayed, transferred and deleted in the vehicle.

In some national-market versions, recordings are only shown on the control display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h for your own safety.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Snapshot"
4. "Gallery"
5. Select desired recording.
6. Select the desired setting.

Scan the QR code shown in the display to transfer recordings to a mobile device. The recording is transferred when the pop-up on the mobile device is opened. The mobile device must be connected to the vehicle via WLAN.

Settings

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Snapshot"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

An individual gesture can be set up for recording with the interior camera.

Remote Inside View

Recordings from the vehicle interior can be displayed on a mobile device with the BMW app to check the vehicle interior, e.g., for forgotten objects.

Anti-theft recorder

When the alarm system is triggered, the interior camera will automatically record the vehicle interior. The BMW app is used for notification and the recording can be displayed on the mobile device.

Occupying the seats

The interior camera is also used for the detection of occupied seats. Two light points may thereby be illuminated next to the interior camera.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Safety information

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g., mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an ac-

cident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening the glove compartment



Press the button.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing the fold-out compartment

Fold lid closed.

Storage in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

A holder for smartphones is located in the armrest of the front passenger door.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving.

Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

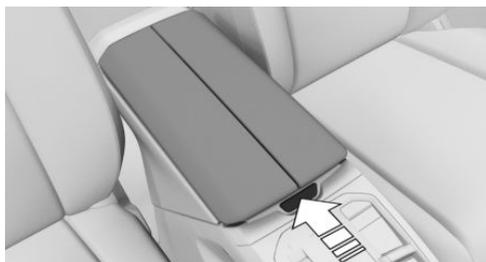
weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Front center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the center armrest



Press the button.

Closing the center armrest

Press both lids down until they engage.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

Overview



Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

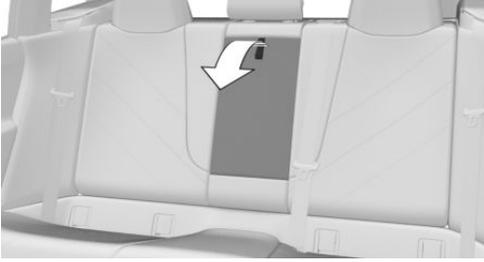
Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

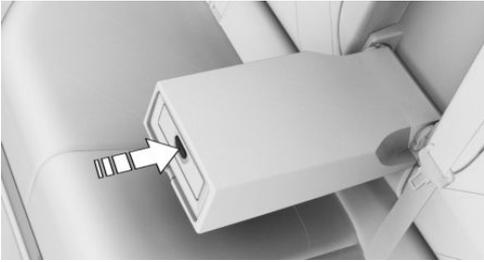
With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening the cup holder

1. Fold down the center armrest.



2. Press the button.



3. The cup holder extends.

Closing the cup holder

Push the cup holder back until it engages.

Coat hooks

General information

Two folding coat hooks are provided on the headliner in the rear of the vehicle. Press sideways onto the edge to fold open.

Two additional coat hooks are located on the body pillars in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g., mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available

cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Payload

 ≤ Max. Load

 ≤ Max. Load

 ≤ Max. Load

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▶ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▶ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▶ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▶ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- ▶ Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▶ Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▶ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.



The lashing eyes are located on the side panels in the cargo area.

Multifunction hook

General information

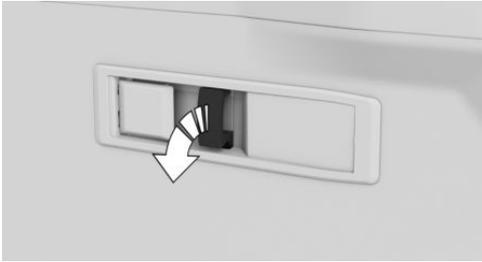
A multifunction hook is located on the right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

Folding out the multifunction hook



Fold out the multifunction hook.

Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the left side trim for fastening small objects.

Cargo floor panel

General information

There are storage compartments beneath the cargo floor panel.

Payload

For the storage under the cargo area floor, do not exceed a maximum payload of 44 lbs/20 kg.

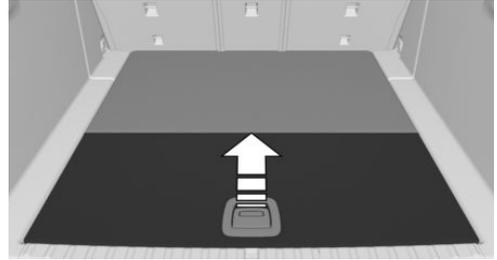
Rear storage compartment

General information

The onboard vehicle tool kit is located on the left in the storage compartment.

The cargo area partition net can be stowed in the corresponding mounts.

Opening the storage compartment



Pull on the handle and fold the cargo area floor forward.

Closing the storage compartment

Press the cargo floor panel down, until it engages.

Front storage compartment

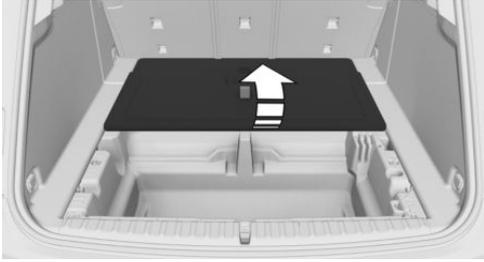
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the cargo area floor can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Do not use the cargo area floor to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a partition net.
- ▷ Only use the cargo area floor in the folded-up position when the rear seat backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Fold down the cargo area floor before driving off.
- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, for instance.

Opening the storage compartment



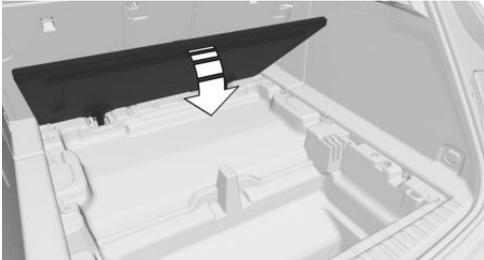
Fold the cargo area floor folded forward up to the latching point.

Folding the cargo area floor further up will release it from the holders.

Additional information:

Insert cargo area floor, refer to page 276.

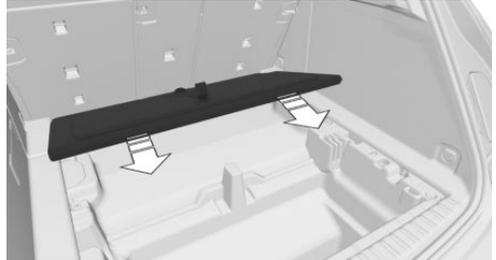
Closing the storage compartment



Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Removing the cargo floor panel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.
2. Slightly raise the cargo area floor.
3. Pull the cargo area floor back and out of the brackets and remove.



Inserting the cargo floor panel

Proceed in reverse order to insert the cargo area floor:

1. Position the folded cargo area floor flat at the mounts.
2. Push the cargo area floor forward into the mounts. The cargo area floor engages noticeably.

Enlarging the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

Fold down rear seat backrest

From the rear



Pull the switch and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area



Pull the switch inside the cargo area.

- ▷ Upper switch: the right rear seat backrest folds forward.
- ▷ Lower switch: the left and center rear seat backrests fold forward.

Folding back the backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

Folding down the center section



Fold down the center armrest and pull on the loop.

Cargo cover

Safety information

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, e.g., mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

Warning

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior, such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

Remove cargo covers

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.

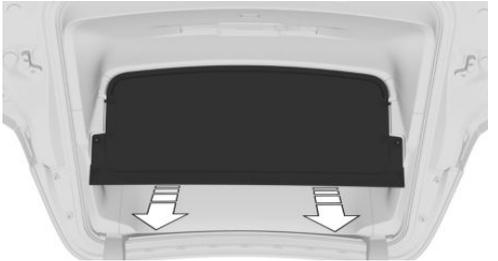
Cover in the trunk



Pull the cover rearward out of the two side brackets.

Cover in the tailgate

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Release cover on both sides.



3. Raise the cover slightly and remove it to the rear.

Inserting covers

Proceed in the reverse order to reinstall. Make sure that the cargo covers are positioned correctly in the brackets and that they are engaged.

Cover in the cargo area:

1. Place cover on the left and right.
2. Lift the cover slightly to the rear and push toward the front until it engages on both side brackets.

Cover in the tailgate:

1. Insert cover into the brackets.
2. Engage cover on the bottom on both sides in the brackets.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Break-in

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle service life and good efficiency.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Drive system

Drive restrained for the first 300 miles/500 km and avoid full throttle.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to production-related circumstances when tires are brand-new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

Driving on poor roads

Principle

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve drive power.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- ▶ Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- ▶ Do not take risks when driving.

- ▶ Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- ▶ Avoid body bottom coming in contact with the ground.
The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load status.
- ▶ When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

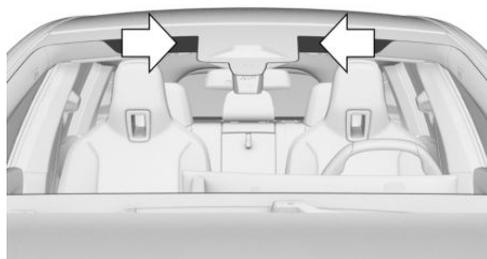
- ▶ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▶ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▶ Drive moderately.

Ice on window glass

NOTICE

The window will be lowered slightly when pulling on the door handle. In the event of frost, the window may freeze up and not be lowered. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. When pulling on the door handle, make sure that the window is lowered. If necessary, remove snow and ice from the window. Do not open the door with force.

Climate comfort windshield



The marked area is not covered with heat reflective coating.

Use the marked area, such as for garage door opener, devices for electronic fee collection or payment systems.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an external antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as aquaplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- ▶ Drive through calm water only.
- ▶ Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▶ Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter under the hood, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform emergency braking in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt, in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few kilometers.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

The braking effect of the drivetrain can be influenced through the energy recovery.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance drive-train braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive in idle state or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▶ Low mileage.
- ▶ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▶ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▶ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

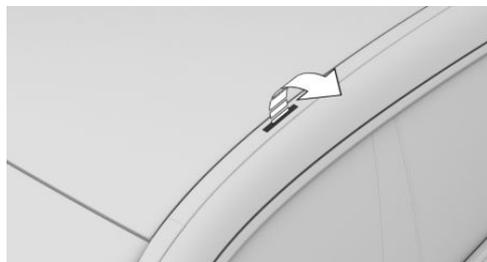
Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Roof drip rail with flaps

The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions of the roof rack. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle weights and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the “New Vehicle Limited Warranty” Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Increasing range

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page [7](#).

Increasing the range

General information

The vehicle contains comprehensive technologies for reducing energy consumption and for maximizing the range.

The implementation of certain measures, such as driving style and regular maintenance, can increase the range.

Additional information:

Range, refer to page [150](#).

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight reduces the range.

Remove attached parts following use

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the energy consumption.

Closing windows

Open windows increase drag and therefore reduce the range.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect energy consumption in various ways, for instance energy consumption can be influenced by tire size.

Check the tire pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises energy consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire pressure specifications, refer to page [301](#).

Pre-conditioning

Run advance climate control in the vehicle during charging before driving off.

Heating and cooling operations are very energy intensive and substantially reduce the electric range.

Additional information:

Stationary climate control, refer to page [259](#).

Proactive driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces energy consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Use accelerator pedal for deceleration and coasting

When approaching a red traffic light, use the accelerator or brake pedal early to decelerate.

Use the coasting function when driving downhill. Press accelerator pedal just enough that the vehicle rolls.

With adaptive energy recovery: do not step on the accelerator pedal. Coasting and deceleration are automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and reduce the range, especially in city traffic and with stop-and-go driving.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The Efficient driving mode supports the energy-saving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated, either partially or completely.

The Efficient and Efficient Climate Control driving modes support the energy-saving use of comfort features. In the Efficient driving mode, the comfort functions are automatically deactivated. In the Personal driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

In the Personal driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

Also refer to BMW Maintenance System.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

The adaptive recuperation supports an adaptive and comfort oriented driving style. Map data and various sensors analyze the current driving situation, such as the distance to the vehicle in front.

General information

Adaptive recuperation is available depending on the equipment and national-market version.

The system decides based on the situation if and how much the energy is recovered through recuperation or if the vehicle coasts. Depending on the strength of the recuperation, the vehicle is decelerated differently while coasting.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

The adaptive recuperation can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 148.

Display on the Control Display

The adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Current driving condition, refer to page 156.

Activating the energy recovery

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Adaptive recuperation"
6. Select the desired setting.

Coasting

Principle

The electrical drivetrain makes it possible to roll without consuming energy. This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

With vehicle rolling, no energy is recovered.

Exemplary driving situations

If a route can be traveled without anticipated need for braking, it is advantageous to roll.

The following exemplary driving situations may be suitable:

- ▶ Rolling on a straight downhill route without obstacles.
- ▶ Coasting on a distance without obstacles.

Avoid late or strong braking.

Functional requirements

- ▶ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▶ Adaptive recuperation is activated
- ▶ Dynamic Stability Control is activated.
- ▶ Brake is not depressed.
- ▶ Accelerator pedal is not operated.

System limits

- ▶ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▶ With country-specific restrictions on map based route sections.
- ▶ With temporary and variable speed limits, such as in construction areas.
- ▶ While Active Cruise Control is active.
- ▶ With defective, dirty or covered sensors.

Driving mode Efficient

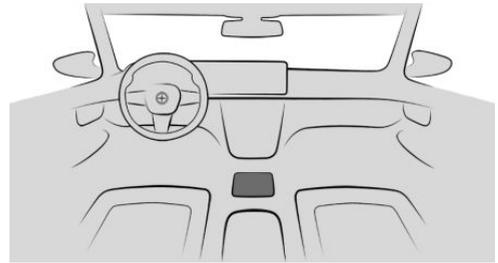
Principle

The Efficient driving mode supports an efficient driving style.

In addition, the efficiency trainer displays situation dependent notes to assist with an efficient driving style.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



My Modes

Selecting the driving mode

1.  Press the button.
2. "Switch mode"
3. Select the driving mode.

Configuring Efficient driving mode

1.  Press the button.
2. "EFFICIENT"
3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired setting.

Resetting the settings

1.  Press the button.
2. "EFFICIENT"
3. "Settings"
4. "Reset settings"

Efficiency trainer

Principle

The system provides assistance for a proactive and comfort oriented driving style. For this purpose, map information and sensor data is used to analyze the current driving situation, such as upcoming speed limits and vehicles driving ahead. Based on this information, the driver receives notices for an efficient driving style early on. The efficiency of the driving style is evaluated in the control display and shown in three categories.

General information

The system has different displays to support the driver with an efficient driving style.

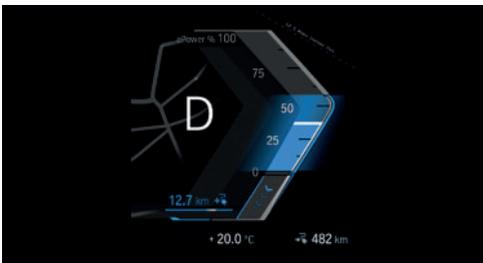
Functional requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D or B is engaged.
- ▷ Efficient driving mode is activated.

Display

Power gauge

When the Efficient Mode is activated, the display changes to a special configuration.



The efficient range of the power gauge is colored blue. Additionally, the bonus range will be displayed.

The efficient range is adjusted depending on the driving situation.

If the power gauge moves within the blue range, the current driving style is efficient. The display

will change to gray if the driving style is inefficient.

Bonus range



A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension is displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

If the bonus range appears is shown in gray or hidden, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Display inefficient driving style



When driving above the efficient range, an arrow will be displayed.

For instance, this is displayed for the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive acceleration.
- ▷ Excessive speed.
- ▷ Special route section such as roundabout ahead.

In addition, a notice to coast in advance is displayed.

System limits

For example, the function is not available in the following situations:

- ▷ While Active Cruise Control is active.
- ▷ With trailer towing.

Efficiency evaluation

General information

The efficiency of the driving style is evaluated in the control display and shown in three categories. The current trip is analyzed.

Functional requirement

This function is available in the Efficient Mode.

Go to efficiency evaluation

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page [154](#)

Display on the Control Display

The display of the efficiency analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the larger the bars of the evaluation categories.

In contrast, a reduced area will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

Charging the vehicle

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

The vehicle can be charged using various charging cables at charging stations, domestic socket outlets or industrial sockets.

Control and monitoring of the charging process are handled completely automatically. The charge current strength can be set via iDrive.

Safety information

Warning

Improper working with electrical current can lead to an electric shock due to high voltages or high currents. There is a risk of fire or danger to life. Observe the general safety regulations when working with electrical current.

Warning

A faulty and incorrectly designed charging device at the charging location can cause damage to the vehicle and overload the power mains at the charging location. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, prior to your first use of a charging location, you have the compatibility of the following components confirmed:

- ▷ Charging cable.
- ▷ Charging station.
- ▷ Domestic socket outlet and connected circuits.

Warning

Damaged or worn charging devices, for instance worn contacts, can heat up. There is a risk of fire. Only use charging devices that are in good condition.

Warning

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. High voltage is present at the charging connection. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that work on the charging connection, for instance cleaning, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

The charging cable connected to the vehicle and the charging cable connections may be damaged due to mechanical load. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not apply mechanical loads to the charging cable and the charging cable connections. Route the charging cable to the vehicle freely and avoid pulling or bending.

High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery serves as energy storage. The high-voltage battery can be charged utilizing energy recovery during the trip or via the power grid.

In order to operate the high-voltage battery optimally, charge the vehicle regularly using a compatible charger.

When charging via the power grid, you can choose between the following variants:

- ▶ Domestic socket outlet.
- ▶ Industrial socket.
- ▶ AC charging station.
- ▶ DC charging station.

For optimal use of the energy from the power mains, charging at a charging station, for instance BMW Wallbox, is recommended.

The BMW Wallbox should meet the following technical requirements:

- ▶ Three-phase output of at least 11 kW.
- ▶ Charging current strengths of 16 A.

Charge current

General information

The charge current strength is indicated in amperes.

The vehicle cannot automatically detect the maximum permissible charge current strength of the power grid during charging via a domestic socket outlet.

Safety information

Warning

If the charge current strength is adjusted incorrectly, the power mains of the domestic socket outlet can be overloaded and overheat. There is a risk of fire. Adjust the charge current

strength to the power mains prior to charging on domestic socket outlets. With unknown power networks, set on the lowest level.

Charging on a domestic socket outlet

The permitted charge current strength must be determined, for instance by a qualified electrician, before first charging with your own domestic socket outlet or when charging with third-party domestic socket outlets.

Current limit

General information

The current limit for charging with the Mode 2 charging cable and the Mode 3 charging cable can be set via iDrive.

Depending on the electrical mains, the set charging current strength may have to be rechecked. The permitted charge current strength must be determined, for instance by a qualified electrician, before charging with a domestic socket outlet.

If the approved charging current strength is unknown, set the current limit to the lowest level.

Activating/deactivating current limit

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Current limit"
5. "Current limit"

The set current limit is activated or deactivated.

Set current limit

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Current limit"
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored. When you change charging locations you also might need to change the setting for charging.

Charging cable

General information

Use a Mode 2 charging cable, Mode 3 charging cable, or the permanently installed cable of a charging station to charge the vehicle.

Depending on national-market version, different charging cables are required and are included in the vehicle's scope of delivery.

Safety information

Warning

Non-compatible charging cables or unsuitable charging stations can heat up and cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of fire. Use charging cables or charging stations for charging that are suitable for the respective vehicle type.

A dealer's service center will be glad to provide information about suitable charging cables.

Warning

Improper use of the charging cable can prevent charging and lead to damage, for instance cable fire. There is a risk of fire. Use the charging cable only for charging the vehicle, and do not extend it using cables or adapters.

Warning

Damaged charging cables can heat up or lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of fire or an injury hazard. Use undamaged charging cables only.

Warning

An incorrectly connected charging cable can lead to damage, for instance cable fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the charging cable connector is completely inserted in the charging socket.

AC charging cable

Mode 2 charging cable

Mode 2 charging cables can be used to charge the vehicle from grounded domestic socket outlets. Charging at domestic socket outlet electrical connections is performed with alternating current.

When a Mode 2 charging cable is used, the efficiency values may differ from those stated on the energy label.

The Mode 2 charging cable is also referred to as standard charging cable.

Flexible Fast Charger

The Flexible Fast Charger is a special mode 2 charging cable.

The interchangeable mains plugs of the Flexible Fast Charger allow you to charge flexibly using domestic socket outlets or industrial sockets with protective conductors.

Mode 3 charging cable

The Mode 3 charging cable makes it possible to quickly recharge at sockets of designated AC charging stations using a special connector. Charging is performed with alternating current at designated AC charging stations. The charging process can be completed faster than at domestic socket outlets.

A charging current up max. 16 A is possible.

The charging cable may be permanently installed at the charging station.

The Mode 3 charging cable is also referred to as AC quick charging cable.

DC charging cable

The DC charging cable that is permanently installed at the charging station makes it possible to charge at DC charging stations. Charging is performed with direct current at designated DC charging stations. At the higher dimensioned electrical connection of a DC charging station, the charging time is normally substantially shorter compared to a domestic socket outlet or AC charging station.

During charging at a DC charging station, an indication in the instrument cluster is displayed.

Charge the vehicle only with a DC charging cable with a length less than 98 ft/30 m.

The DC charging cable is also referred to as Mode 4 charging cable.

Storage

For the delivery, the charging cable is stowed in the luggage compartment, for instance under the cargo floor panel or in a bag.

Stow charging cable after use in the same place again.

If the charging cable is stowed in a bag, fasten the bag at an open lashing eye in the luggage compartment.

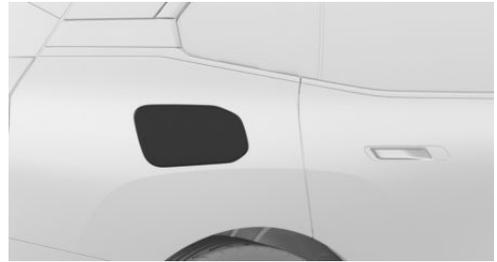
If required, store the charging cable with the installed connector cover to prevent moisture in the charging cable plug.

Connecting the charging cable

General information

Before connecting, clean the area between the charging socket cover and charging socket and the charging cable plug as necessary, for instance remove snow.

Charging socket cover



The charging socket cover is located in the rear on the right side of the vehicle.

Always keep charging socket clean and unobstructed.

Keep the charging socket cover closed when the charging socket is not used.

Connecting a charging cable

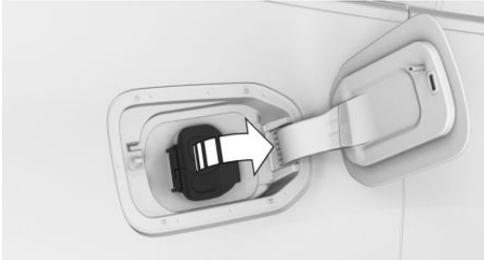
To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive readiness, and unlock the vehicle. Apply the parking brake, if necessary.

1. To open the charging socket cover, press on the rear edge, arrow.

The charging socket cover opens.



2. Open the charging socket cover.



3. Remove the cover of the charging cable connector, if needed.
4. Connect the Mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the Mode 3 charging cable to the port at the AC charging station as needed.
5. Insert the charging cable connector for the charging socket and push it in until it engages.
6. Briefly hold the charging cable until the charging cable is locked correctly.
7. When charging at a charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

Removing the charging cable

General information

AC charging: when the charging process is active and the vehicle is locked, the charging cable is locked. Unlock the vehicle before removing.

Direct current charging: during the charging process, the charging cable is locked. When the

charging process is completed, the charging cable is automatically unlocked.

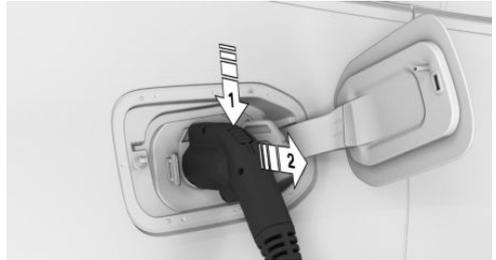
Before unplugging, clean the area between the charging socket cover and charging socket as necessary, for instance remove snow.

Disconnecting a charging cable

1. If necessary, unlock the vehicle or the charging cable via iDrive.

Charging cable is unlocked.

2. Press the release button on the handle, arrow 1, and grasp the charging cable at the gripping areas.



3. Detach the charging cable from the charging socket, arrow 2.
4. Closing the charging socket cover.
5. Press the charging socket cover closed until it engages.
6. Attach cover of the charging cable connector, if needed.
7. Remove the mode 2 charging cable from the domestic socket outlet or the fast charging cable (mode 3) from the socket on the AC charging station as needed.
8. Stow the charging cable as required.

At a charging station, insert the permanently installed charging cable in the place provided for it.

Unlocking the charging cable

Principle

The charging cable is unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked. The charging cable can also be unlocked via iDrive.

Unlocking charging cable via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Unlock charging cable"
5. "Unlock charging cable now"
6. "Stop and unlock charging cable"

Additional settings

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Unlock charging cable"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Unlock charging cable when charging finishes": as soon as the charging process is completed, the charging cable will be unlocked automatically.
 - ▷ "Unlock charging socket cover permanently": the charging socket cover can be kept unlocked so that the charging socket cover can be opened even when the vehicle is locked.

Charging process

Principle

The charging process can be adapted to constraints, such as the cost of electricity, available power sources, or a low ambient temperature. The vehicle controls the charging process in such a way that the charging process is com-

pleted if possible at the departure time. A departure time must be set for this purpose.

General information

High or low outside temperatures can cause longer charging times.

When charging the vehicle, a charge target can be set, thereby shortening the charging duration.

When guidance to a DC charging station has been started, the high-voltage battery is preheated/precooled as much as possible until the destination is reached. This increases the charging capacity during the charging process and shortens the charging time. Preheating/precooling considers factors such as remaining range or outside temperatures.

If the Mode 2 charging cable is exposed to high temperatures and direct sunlight, this may interrupt the charging process. Charging will resume automatically.

A charging procedure is canceled or not started due to the installation of a Remote Software Upgrade. The charging procedure may not continue automatically after the successful installation.

Safety information

NOTICE

The charging socket cover and charging socket outlet cover may be damaged by strain. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not strain the charging socket cover and charging socket outlet cover, e.g., by dropping the charging cable.

Starting the charging process

1. Engage selector lever position P. Set the parking brake, if needed.
2. Planning the charging process.
For planning the charging process, refer to page 297.
3. Switch off drive-ready state.

4. Connect the Mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the Mode 3 charging cable to the port at the AC charging station as needed.
5. Open the charging socket cover.
6. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle. Connecting the charging cable, refer to page 293.
7. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

After the charging cable connector is plugged into the high-voltage charging socket, the charging cable is locked automatically.

Charging status display

Indicator light at the charging socket



The charging status is indicated on the indicator light on the charging socket.

Charging status

Light	Meaning
White	Charging cable can be connected.
Yellow	Charging cable is locked.
Flashing yellow	Charging process is being prepared.
Blue	Charging process paused.
Flashing blue	Charging process is active.

Light	Meaning
Flashing red	Fault in the charging process.
Green	Charging process is complete.

When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light goes out after some time.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the blue indicator light flashes continuously. The other indicator lights turn off after some time.

🔑 Press the button on the vehicle key to check the charging state. The charging status is indicated on the indicator light. In some cases the vehicle is locked.

Additional messages about the charging status can be displayed in the instrument cluster or via the BMW app on the mobile terminal.

Setting the charging mode

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Charging mode"
5. Select the desired settings:
 - ▶ "Charge immediately": the charging process starts as soon as the charging cable is connected.
 - ▶ "Charging in time slot": if a departure time is set, you can set a time frame for charging with a favorable electricity rate.

Charging in the time frame

General information

For the charging process, you can set a time frame for charging with a favorable electricity rate.

The vehicle can also start the charging process before the selected time frame begins or end it after the selected time frame finishes. The status update of the charging process is adjusted so the vehicle can be as fully charged as possible

and, if applicable, its climate adjusted by the departure time.

Functional requirement

A departure time is defined.

Setting the time frame for favorable-rate

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Charging mode"
5. "Charging in time slot"
6. Select the desired setting.

Charge target

Principle

A target value in percent can be set for charging the high-voltage battery.

When a lower target value is set, the charging time may be shortened.

General information

The charging with a set charging target is especially suitable for charging at DC charging stations.

A target value of 80 % is recommended for optimal use of the function.

Target values below 20 % cannot be set.

Set charge target

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Charging target"
5. Select the desired setting.

Permissible volume DC charging

When the vehicle is charged at a DC charging station, the noise emission during the charging process can be limited, for instance to comply

with the local noise level restrictions. A limitation of the noise emission can lead to longer charging times.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Fan loudness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Stopping the charging process

The charging process can be stopped at any time by removing the charging cable and continued at a later time by connecting the charging cable. This enables other consumers to use the electrical connection in the meantime or prevents simultaneous high power draws from multiple consumers, for instance.

Additional information:

Detach, refer to page [294](#).

Continuing the charging process

If the charging process is interrupted, for instance due to a temporary power failure, the charging process will continue automatically after the interruption.

When the vehicle is charged at a public charging station, the charging process may not continue automatically after an interruption.

End charging process

1. Remove the charging cable from the vehicle.
Detach, refer to page [294](#).
2. Stow the charging cable as required.
3. Press the charging socket cover closed until it engages.
4. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Goodbye screen on control display

When drive readiness is switched off, a goodbye screen is displayed on the control display, in

which, among other things, some settings can be applied for charging via iDrive.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The charge state indicator light shows the charge state of the high-voltage battery in the instrument cluster, if standby state is switched on. When all bars are filled, the high-voltage battery is fully charged.

Even if no bars are filled, the high-voltage system is still under high voltage.

Information regarding the charging process is shown on the charging screen.

Display Meaning

AC Charging the vehicle with a Mode 2 charging cable or Mode 3 charging cable.

DC Charging the vehicle with a DC charging cable.

120 kW Current charging capacity.
 + Icon indicates when the maximum charging capacity of the vehicle has been reached.

max. 9 A Maximum charging current strength or currently set current limit.

 Charging cable locked.

 Charging cable unlocked.

80 % Set charge target.

 Departure time set.

Display Meaning

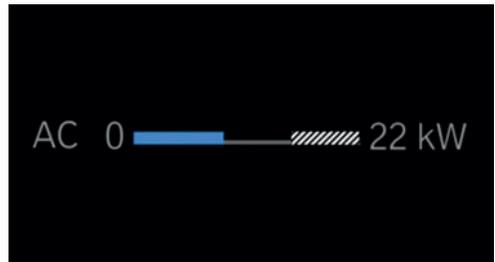
 One-time departure time set.

 Climate control activated at departure time.

 Flashing: ventilation or cooling active.

 Blinking: heating active.

 Yellow icon: charging capacity of the charging station is not available or is limited.



The shaded area indicates a limitation in the charging capacity that can occur, for instance, due to the connected charging infrastructure.

Additional information:

Charging screen, refer to page [141](#).

Departure time

Principle

For optimum range and climate control, the departure time can be set before parking the vehicle.

General information

With a set departure time, the vehicle is pre-heated or pre-cooled if climate control is set.

The following settings are possible for departure time:

- ▶ Climate control for departure time.
- ▶ Scheduling of up to three regular departure times.
- ▶ Planning a one-time departure time.

Climate control for departure time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Departure plan"
5. "Pre-conditioning for departure"

Setting the departure time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the time and weekday.

Activating the departure time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Charging"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

The set departure time will be deactivated if the departure time was ignored three times in a row.

Climate control

The following settings for vehicle air conditioning are possible:

- ▶ Activate stationary climate control immediately.

The range will be reduced if pre-conditioning is activated without a charging cable connected.

- ▶ Planned climate control at the set departure time.

Additional information:

Stationary climate control, refer to page [259](#).

Discharged high-voltage and vehicle battery

General information

In addition to the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12 volt vehicle battery, which is required for operation of the onboard electronics.

With a discharged vehicle battery, no operation of the vehicle is possible.

Service life of high-voltage battery

General information

The high-voltage battery is maintenance-free.

Principle

The performance of the high-voltage battery decreases over its service life. The service life of the high-voltage battery can be optimized by how it is used.

Charging instructions

When charging multiple times in succession using DC, e.g. during a longer trip, the charging capacity is temporarily reduced as needed to protect the high-voltage battery.

The charging capacity is also reduced as the service life of the high-voltage battery increases.

To optimize the service life of the high-voltage battery, note the following:

- ▶ Preferably charge at AC charging stations for daily use.
- ▶ Keep the charge level between 10 % to 80 % if possible, for instance by setting a charging target of 80 %. Charging target, see Charging process, refer to page 295.

Before and while driving

To optimize the service life of the high-voltage battery, note the following:

- ▶ Bring the high-voltage battery to operating temperature before driving. To do this, pre-heat/precool the vehicle. Setting the departure time, refer to page 298.
- ▶ Drive proactively. Increasing the range, refer to page 285.

Parking

To optimize the service life of the high-voltage battery, note the following:

- ▶ Avoid direct sunlight at high outside temperatures.
- ▶ Park the vehicle in a secure location at low outside temperatures such as in a garage.

Long stationary periods

Before a longer stationary period, note the following:

- ▶ If possible, park the vehicle with a charge level between 30 % and 50 %.
- ▶ Do not leave the charging cable connected.
- ▶ Do not park the vehicle for longer than 14 days if the electric range is exhausted.

Taking out of service

For information on taking the battery out of service and maintenance and repair of the battery, please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet and the Maintenance Book. The Maintenance Book is available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire pressure influence the following:

- ▶ The service life of the tires.
- ▶ Driving safety.
- ▶ Driving comfort.
- ▶ Energy consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 301, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the

ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▶ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▶ Maximum speed for driving.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.

3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▶ A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▶ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

If equipped with an emergency wheel: check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

After correcting the tire pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

iX xDrive40, iX xDrive50

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/50 R 21 109 Y XL	2.5 / 36	3.0 / 44
255/50 R 21 109 H XL A/S		
255/50 R 21 109 H XL M+S		

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
235/60 R 20 108 H XL A/S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
235/60 R 20 108 H XL		
235/60 R 20 108 H XL M+S		
275/40 R 22 107 Y XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

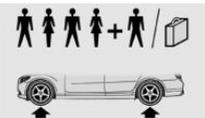
Warning

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

iX xDrive40, iX xDrive50

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/50 R 21 109 Y XL	2.5 / 36	3.0 / 44

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
255/50 R 21 109 H XL A/S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48
255/50 R 21 109 H XL M+S		
235/60 R 20 108 H XL A/S	2.9 / 42	3.4 / 49
235/60 R 20 108 H XL		
235/60 R 20 108 H XL M+S		
275/40 R 22 107 Y XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load bearing capacity

Y: speed code letter

ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 3821

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3821: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 3821	38th week of 2021

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

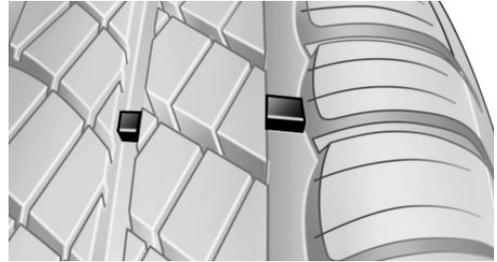
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter driving conditions.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There may be a risk of accident and risk of damage to property. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Approved wheels and tires

General information

The following sizes are recommended and approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the approved wheels and tires per vehicle type and special equipment:

- ▷ Wheel and tire combinations.
- ▷ Rim designs.
- ▷ Tire sizes.
- ▷ Tire brands.

You can ask a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the approved wheels and tires for the vehicle and the special equipment.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will impair the vehicle's handling characteristics and a variety of system functions, such as the Antilock Braking System (ABS) or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to production-related circumstances when tires are brand-new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires**⚠ Warning**

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires**General information**

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires can be identified by the symbol with mountain and snowflake, as well as the M+S marking on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with M+S designation, but without symbol with mountain and snowflake, have better winter characteristics than summer tires but generally do not achieve the performance of winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of vision. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Wheel change between axles

Different abrasion patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even abrasion. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After changing, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

Storage

- ▶ Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- ▶ Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- ▶ Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- ▶ Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.

- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▶ Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Tire repair set

Principle

With the tire repair set, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued driving.

General information

- ▶ The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on using the tire repair set found on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- ▶ The use of a tire repair set can be ineffective if the tire puncture measures above approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▶ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

Storage

Storage for the tire repair set is provided in the compartment under the cargo area floor.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



- 1 Sealant bottle
- 2 Sealant bottle outlet
- 3 Filler hose
- 4 Sealant bottle connection
- 5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



- 1 Compressor
- 2 Tire pressure display
- 3 Pressure reducing valve button
- 4 Sealant bottle holder
- 5 Connector for socket
- 6 On/off switch

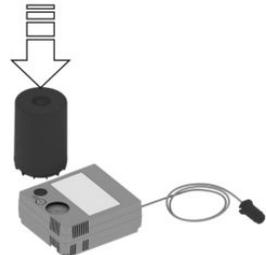
Safety precautions

- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake to secure the vehicle against rolling away.

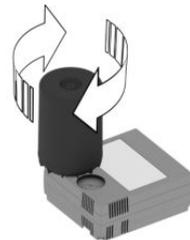
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▶ Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.
- ▶ Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the compressor and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.
- ▶ Remove the warning label from the tire sealant bottle and attach it to the rim.

Preparing the tire repair set

1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.



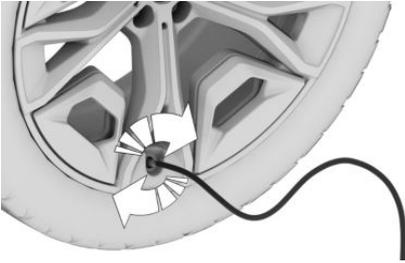
2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.



4. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the filler hose onto the valve.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.



2. Switch off the compressor.

Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Unscrew the valve cap.

4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

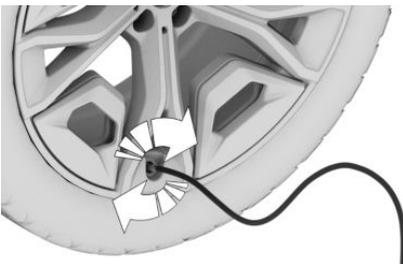
Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise by 90° until it audibly engages.



3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the hose onto the valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

6. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
 - ▶ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive readiness turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
 - ▶ Reduce tire pressure: press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Remove and stow the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Unscrew the valve cap.
5. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance travelled of 125 miles/200 km.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle of the tire repair set promptly.

Additional information:

- ▶ Run-flat tires, refer to page 319.
- ▶ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 313.

System limits

Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.

The use of a sealing compound can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Tire chains

Safety information

Warning

With the mounting of tire chains on unsuitable tires, the tire chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount tire chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of tire chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight tire chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the tire chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
235/60 R20	8.5J x 20	28
255/50 R21	9J x 21	36

Information for the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information about approved wheels and tires for the vehicle can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with tire chains, activate the drive-off support to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free movement of the wheels when operating with tire chains, rear axle steering must be turned off when tire chains are mounted.

Safety information

Warning

When rear axle steering is switched on and tire chains are mounted, there can be contact between tire chains and the body. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. With mounted tire chains, switch off the rear axle steering.

Switching off rear axle steering

The rear axle steering is switched off by specifying that tire chains are installed.



1. Press the button.
2. "Drivetrain and chassis"
3. "Tire chains"
4. "Tire chains fitted"

Starting with the permissible maximum speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h the rear axle steering will be switched on again automatically.

Tire pressure monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or registered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 301.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable message of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ After each tire or wheel change, the system detects and updates the mounted tires and displays them after a short trip on the Control Display.
- ▶ Enter the information about the mounted tires in the tire settings when the system does not automatically detect the tires.
- ▶ The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
 - ▶ After a tire or wheel change.
 - ▶ After a reset, for tires with special approval.
 - ▶ After changing the tire setting.
- ▶ For tires with special approval:
 - ▶ After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
 - ▶ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- ▶ Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The information about the mounted tires can be entered in the tire settings if the system does not automatically detect the tires.

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "MENU"
 2. "Vehicle apps"
 3. "Live Vehicle"
 4. "Content"
 5. "Vehicle status"
 6. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
 7. "Tire settings"
 8. "Tire selection"
 9. "Manual"
 10. "Tire type"
 11. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.
For tires with special approval:
"Other tires"
Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
 12. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
 13. "Save tire settings"
- The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving and outside temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load status is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- ▶ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▶ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▶ Malfunction.
- ▶ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▶ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"

5. "Vehicle status"
6. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
7. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.
Tire settings, refer to page 314.
8. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
9. Reset tire pressure: "Perform reset".
10. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure...".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 317.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated.

The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.

The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



There is a tire pressure loss.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
------	----------------



There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 317.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Using a sealing compound, for instance from the tire repair set, may damage the wheel

electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- ▶ A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▶ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▶ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▶ Tire Pressure Monitor malfunction: have the system checked by a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a

TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Principle

The Flat Tire display detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable message of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▶ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▶ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▶ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▶ After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "Flat Tire Monitor"

7. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
8. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
9. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the DSC Dynamic Stability Control is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▶ A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▶ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▶ The system has not been initialized.
- ▶ When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- ▶ Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▶ When driving with tire chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a tire repair set is used, the wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in the event of a breakdown when there is tire pressure loss.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service

center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the vehicle jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

Warning

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Incorrect handling of the vehicle jack can damage the vehicle's underbody and expose high-voltage components. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the

jacking point next to the wheel housing. Make sure not to damage any of the underbody paneling parts.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

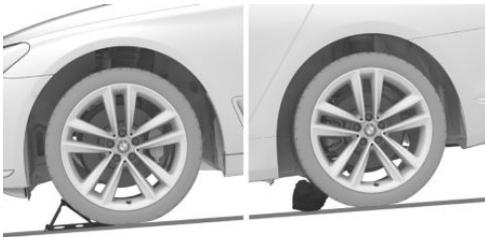
The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface



Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

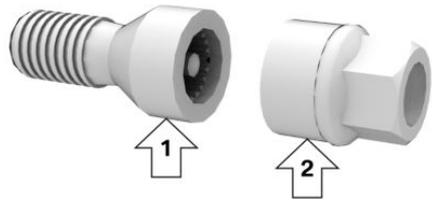
Lug bolt lock

Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▶ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▶ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

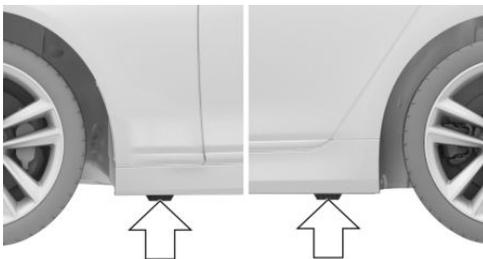
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▶ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▶ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Set the parking brake.
- ▶ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▶ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▶ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- ▶ For air suspension: disable the air suspension level adjustment.
Two-axle ride level control, refer to page 249.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



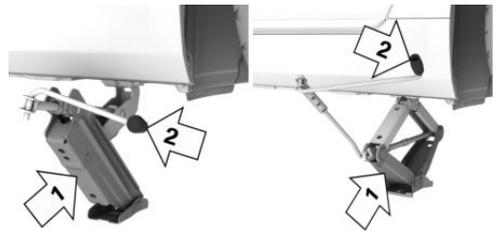
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

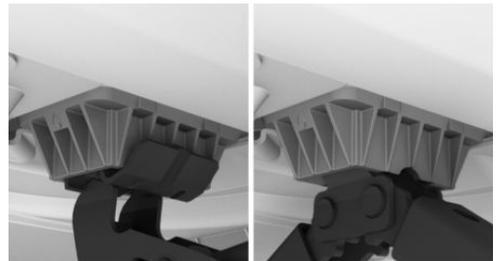
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



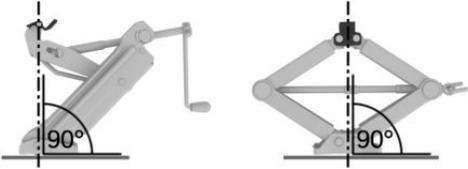
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



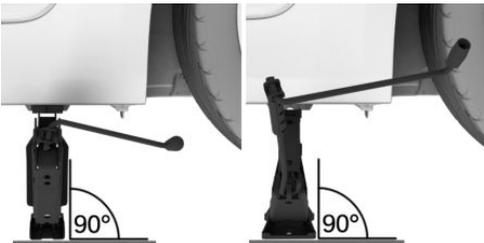
3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.



4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire renewed at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Hood

General information

The hood must only be opened by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Washer fluid, refer to page [327](#).

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work under the hood can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that work under the hood be performed only by an authorized BMW i dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Operating materials

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Coolant

General information

The cooling system is maintenance-free.

Have coolant topped up by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Coolant level

A Check Control message is displayed when the coolant level is low.

Washer fluid

General information

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.4 US gal/2 liters.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located under the hood. Push on the emblem to open the tank. The lid opens when the vehicle is unlocked.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Improperly performed work, in particular maintenance and repair on the high-voltage system, can lead to electric shock. There is a risk of injury, fire and danger to life.

Have work on the vehicle, in particular maintenance and repair, performed by an authorized BMW i dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Principle

Condition Based Service CBS determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 151.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

Have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and changing the micro-filter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD on-board diagnostics

General information

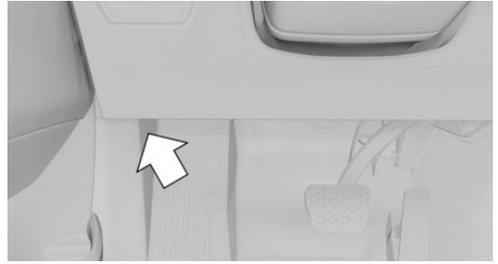
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



Located on the driver's side is an OBD socket for reading the vehicle data.

Replacing components

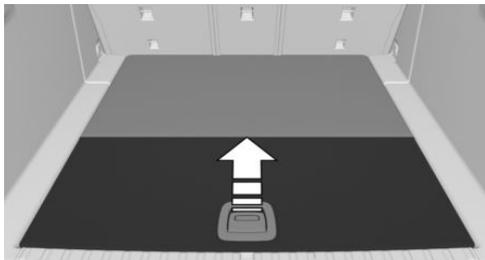
Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo area floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

Replacing the front wiper blades

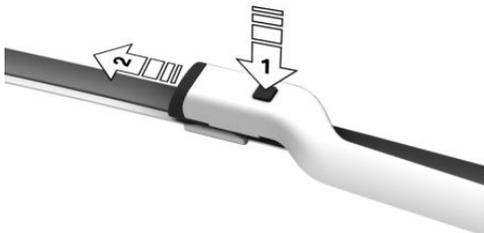
1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 137.

2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.



3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. The wiper arm has connections for window wiper fluid and heating. Insert the connections correctly into the new wiper blade.
5. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder. The wiper arm has connections for window wiper fluid and heating. When inserting, make sure that the connections are inserted into the wiper blade correctly.
6. Fold in the wipers.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade is engaged at the end of the wiper arm.

1. Push the lever down, arrow 1, and pull off wiper blade, arrow 2.



2. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system in-

cluding bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

In addition to the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12 volt vehicle battery. The vehicle battery supplies the onboard electronics with energy.

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a danger of damage to property. In the case of a discharged vehicle battery, contact a manufacturer service center or other qualified service center or repair shop.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

A charger that is installed in the vehicle supplies the vehicle battery with power. The charger receives the necessary energy from the high-voltage battery.

Additional information:

Charge vehicle, refer to page [290](#).

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Parking brake, refer to page [132](#).
- ▷ With Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.

Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown Assistance

Vehicle equipment and options

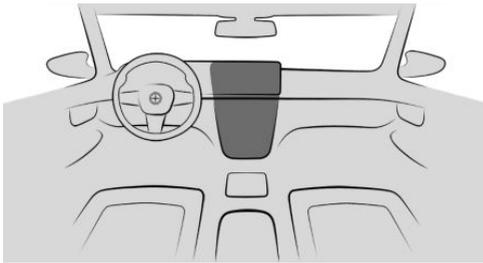
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Hazard warning system

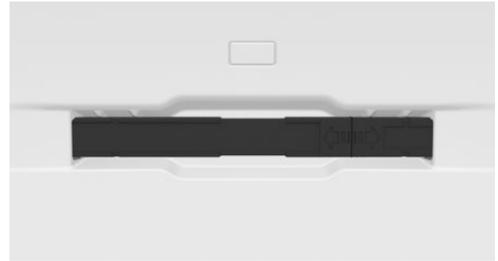
Button in the vehicle



Hazard warning system button

The red light in the button blinks when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

Move the warning triangle sideways and remove it.

First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the cargo area.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message.
Supplementary text messages, refer to page 143.
- ▷ Calling with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW app.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the entry for BMW Roadside Assistance.

A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by

BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Turn on control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 142.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the entry for BMW Accident Assistance.

Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Call

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

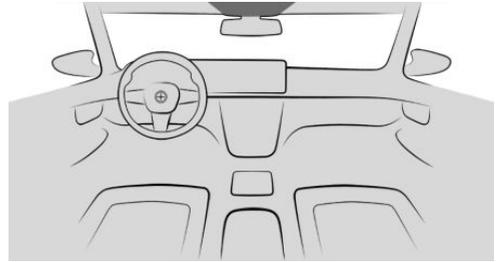
Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an Assist system.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview



Functional requirements

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The Assist system is functional.
- ▶ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
 2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.
- ▶ The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the emergency call can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▶ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The function of the Emergency Request may be impaired.

The LED in the area of the SOS button blinks for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

What to do after an accident

General information

After an accident, comply with the following safety precautions with regard to the high-voltage system:

- ▶ Engage the parking brake and turn off standby and drive-ready state.
- ▶ Secure the crash site.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle after exiting.

- ▶ Immediately notify rescue forces, police, or firefighters of the fact that your vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage system.
- ▶ Do not inhale any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery; if needed, maintain a safe distance from the vehicle.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. After an accident, do not touch any high-voltage components such as orange colored high-voltage cables or parts that are in contact with exposed high-voltage cables.

Warning

Fluids in the high-voltage battery are corrosive. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery.

Jump-starting

General information

Have only a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the jump start.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Towing

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing when Forward Collision Mitigation is activated. There is a risk of accident. Turn Forward Collision Mitigation off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

⚠ NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage.

- Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

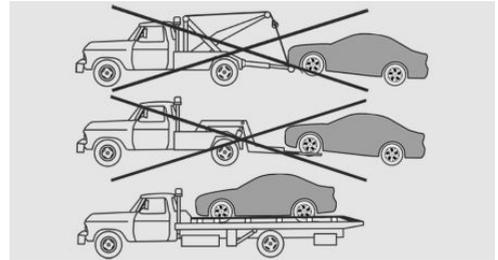
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazardous area, push it for a short distance at a speed of no more than 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 126.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control handling. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- ▷ Free movement is limited when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- ▷ Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- ▷ Check the attachment of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- ▷ When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

Observe the following notes when using the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle.
- ▷ Turn the tow fitting at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- ▷ After use, unscrew the tow fitting counter-clockwise.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- ▷ Check the attachment of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page [331](#).

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Vehicle Care

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign bodies such as leaves or snow in the area below the windshield.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 137.

Safety information

Warning

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. High voltage is present at the charging connection. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that work on the charging connection, for instance cleaning, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

When washing with an open charging socket cover, the charging socket can be damaged. There is a danger of damage to property. Close the charging socket cover before washing. Clean dirt behind the charging socket cover with a cloth.

Steam cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

- ▶ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▶ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▶ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic washing systems or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Before driving into the car wash, make sure that the vehicle is not too large.
- ▷ Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- ▷ Do not activate camera cleaning via iDrive while washing the vehicle to prevent damage on the cleaning system.

Driving into a car wash

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not switch standby state off in car washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page [126](#).

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive readiness.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page [46](#).

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking effect can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, immediately to prevent the leather from being altered or discolored.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances such as sunscreen to prevent the synthetic leather from being altered or discolored.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances such as sunscreen to prevent the fabric from being altered or discolored.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers and other cloth upholstery in the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam cleaners above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective coating of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes shortly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the headliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Displays, screens and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Chemical cleaning agents, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth.

Depending on vehicle equipment: clean the protective glass of the Head-up display using a microfiber cloth and standard dish soap.

Sensors and camera lenses

General information

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Front and rearview camera

The front and rearview cameras can be cleaned automatically.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Parking"
4. "More"
5. "Camera cleaning"
6. Select the desired setting.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available

now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 7.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific

measuring process. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on signs on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

BMW iX

Width with mirrors	in/mm	87.8/2,230
Width without mirrors	in/mm	77.4/1,967
Height	in/mm	66.8/1,696
Length	in/mm	195/4,953
Wheelbase	in/mm	118.1/3,000
Smallest turning radius diam.		
without integral active steering	ft/m	42.7/13.0
with integral active steering	ft/m	40.4/12.3

Weights

iX xDrive50

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	6,867/3,115
Payload	lbs/kg	1,054/478
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	3,373/1,530
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	3,902/1,770

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- ▶ Operation: Safety: BMW Drive Recorder: Recording function

License Texts and Certifications

Mexico

Front Radar Sensor

IFETEL: RCPCOAR21-1028

Certificado de homologacion:

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

USA/Canada

Front Radar Sensor

Model: ARS5-A

IC: 4135A-ARS5A

FCC ID: OAYARS5A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt

RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC and IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 30 cm between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 30 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

FCC Notice

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Smart Access

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt

RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D view [231](#)

A

ABS Antilock Braking System [201](#)

Accelerator pedal positions [127](#)

Accessories and parts [9](#)

AC charging station, see Charging vehicle [290](#)

Accident prevention, see Active Protection [197](#)

Accident, what to do [338](#)

Acoustic pedestrian protection [121](#)

AC quick charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable [292](#)

Active Blind Spot Detection [188](#)

Active Cruise Control, distance control, see Speed control systems [205](#)

Active Park Distance Control [236](#)

Active Protection [197](#)

Active seat ventilation [114](#)

Active Steering, integral [203](#)

Adaptive brake assistant [201](#)

Adaptive Light Control [163](#)

Adaptive lighting functions [163](#)

Adapt speed to route [223](#)

Adjustments, steering wheel [112](#)

Advance climate control, see Stationary climate control [259](#)

Airbags [169](#)

Airbags, indicator and warning light [171](#)

Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode [256](#)

Air distribution, manual [257](#)

Air flow, automatic climate control [257](#)

Air outlets, see Ventilation [258](#)

Air pressure, tires [301](#)

Air quality [259](#)

Air suspension, see Two-axle ride level control [249](#)

Alarm signal, high-voltage battery [15](#)

Alarm system [99](#)

Alarm, unintentional [100](#)

All-season tires, see Winter tires [307](#)

All-wheel-drive, see xDrive [203](#)

Ambient light [167](#)

Android Auto, connection to the vehicle [77](#)

Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle [77](#)

Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration [77](#)

Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [327](#)

Antilock Braking System ABS [201](#)

Anti-slip control, see Dynamic Stability Control [201](#)

Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock [322](#)

Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle [76](#)

Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration [76](#)

Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Aquaplaning [282](#)

Armrest heating [114](#)

Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic pedestrian protection [121](#)

Assistance with breakdown [335](#)

Assisted Driving, lane guidance, see Speed control systems [205](#)

Assisted Driving Plus, see Speed control systems [205](#)

Assisted View [140](#)

Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)

AUTO H button, see Automatic Hold [132](#)

Automatic camera perspective [230](#)

Automatic car wash [342](#)

Automatic climate control [252](#)

Automatic control, headlight [160](#)

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror [112](#)

- Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags [172](#)
- Automatic deactivation of the high-voltage system [16](#)
- Automatic headlight control [160](#)
- Automatic High Beam Assistant [164](#)
- Automatic Hold [132](#)
- Automatic locking [98](#)
- Automatic Parking Assistant [238](#)
- Automatic Parking Assistant Professional [238](#)
- Automatic Recirculating Air Control [256](#)
- Automatic time setting [150](#)
- Automatic unlocking [98](#)
- Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [58](#)
- AUTO program, automatic climate control [254](#)
- Average consumption, see Trip data [155](#)
- Axle loads, approved [349](#)
- ## B
- Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support [106](#)
- Backrest, seats [105](#)
- Backrest tilt [106](#)
- Backrest, width [107](#)
- Back-up Assistant Professional [247](#)
- Bad road trips [280](#)
- Bandages, see First-aid kit [335](#)
- Bar for tow-starting/towing [340](#)
- Battery, charge state indicator [148](#)
- Battery, disposing of [333](#)
- Battery high-voltage system, long stationary periods [299](#)
- Battery, vehicle [332](#)
- Being towed, see Towing [339](#)
- Belts, see Safety belts [107](#)
- B, gear position [125](#)
- Blind spot collision warning [188](#)
- Blocking, power window, see Safety switch [103](#)
- Bluetooth connection [73](#)
- Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- BMW Accident Assistance [336](#)
- BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- BMW Digital Key [93](#)
- BMW Drive Recorder [195](#)
- BMW eDrive [121](#)
- BMW Gesture Control [59](#)
- BMW ID [67](#)
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)
- BMW maintenance system [329](#)
- BMW Roadside Assistance [335](#)
- Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front [271](#)
- Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear [271](#)
- Brake assistant [201](#)
- Brake assistant, adaptive [201](#)
- Brake discs, see Brake system [280](#)
- Brake-in [280](#)
- Brake pads, see Brake system [280](#)
- Brake, see Gear position B [125](#)
- Brake system [280](#)
- Braking, information [282](#)
- Breakdown assistance [335](#)
- Breaking in [280](#)
- Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert [198](#)
- Brightness, Control Display [52](#)
- Button AUTO H, see Automatic Hold [132](#)
- Button, central locking system [95](#)
- Buttons on the steering wheel [36](#)
- Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [337](#)
- Button, Start/Stop [123](#)
- Bypassing, see Jump-starting [338](#)
- ## C
- Cable for tow-starting/towing [340](#)
- Calendar day, see Date [150](#)
- California Proposition 65 Warning [9](#)
- Call, gesture control [60](#)
- Camera instrument cluster, see Driver Attention Camera [199](#)
- Camera lenses, care [346](#)
- Camera perspective, automatic [230](#)
- Camera perspective, semi-automatic [230](#)
- Camera, rearview camera [230](#)
- Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle [41](#)
- Can holder, front, see Cup holder, front [271](#)
- Can holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear [271](#)
- Care [342](#)
- Care, Head-up Display [346](#)
- Care, light-alloy wheels [345](#)

- Care of displays, screens [346](#)
- Care, vehicle [344](#)
- Cargo [273](#)
- Cargo area [273](#)
- Cargo area, enlarging [276](#)
- Cargo cover [278](#)
- Cargo, stowing and securing [274](#)
- Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [274](#)
- Car key, see Vehicle key [80](#)
- Carpet, care [346](#)
- CarPlay, connection to the vehicle [76](#)
- Car seats, see Transporting children safely [116](#)
- Car wash [342](#)
- Car wash, automatic [342](#)
- Car wash view [231](#)
- CBS Condition Based Service [329](#)
- Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Center armrest, front [271](#)
- Center console [38](#)
- Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display [51](#)
- Central locking switch, see Central locking system [95](#)
- Central locking system [95](#)
- Central screen, see Control Display [51](#)
- Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)
- Change, wheels and tires [306](#)
- Changing parts [331](#)
- Changing wheels [320](#)
- CHARGE, energy recovery [122](#)
- Charge state indicator, high-voltage battery [148](#)
- Charging cable, Flexible Fast Charger [292](#)
- Charging cable, high-voltage battery [292](#)
- Charging cable, storing, see Storage [293](#)
- Charging process, see Charging screen [141](#)
- Charging screen [141](#)
- Charging, see Charging the vehicle [290](#)
- Charging, see Vehicle charging [290](#)
- Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [266](#)
- Charging status display, indicator light on charging socket [296](#)
- Charging status, indicator light on charging socket [296](#)
- Charging the battery, see Vehicle charging [290](#)
- Charging the vehicle [290](#)
- Charging the vehicle, see Vehicle charging [290](#)
- Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray [266](#)
- Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)
- Check Control [142](#)
- Children, seating position [116](#)
- Children, transporting safely [116](#)
- Child restraint systems, mounting [117](#)
- Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely [116](#)
- Child safety locks [120](#)
- Child seat, mounting [117](#)
- Child seat mountings LATCH [118](#)
- Child seats, see Transporting children safely [116](#)
- Chrome-plated surfaces, care [345](#)
- Chrome surfaces, care [345](#)
- Cleaning displays, screens [346](#)
- Cleaning, Head-up Display [346](#)
- Clearance, water [282](#)
- Climate comfort windshield [281](#)
- Climate control [252](#)
- Closing with the Key Card [91](#)
- Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [93](#)
- Clothes hooks [272](#)
- Coasting [286](#)
- Coasting with engine decoupled, see Coasting [286](#)
- Coasting with idling engine [286](#)
- Collision warning systems [173](#)
- Combination switch, see Turn signals [133](#)
- Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system [134](#)
- Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison [50](#)
- Compartments in the doors [270](#)
- Compatible devices, see Suitable devices [72](#)
- Compressor [309](#)
- Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

- Condensation water under the parked vehicle [283](#)
- Condensation, windshield [257](#)
- Condition Based Service CBS [329](#)
- Confirmation signal from the vehicle [98](#)
- Connect device [71](#)
- ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets [264](#)
- Connecting, mobile devices [71](#)
- Consumption, see Trip data [155](#)
- Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Contact with water, high-voltage system [15](#)
- Container for washer fluid [327](#)
- Control Display [51](#)
- Control Display, brightness [52](#)
- Control display, pop-ups [50](#)
- Control systems, driving stability [201](#)
- Convoy Assistant, Assisted Driving Plus, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Coolant [327](#)
- Cooling, maximum [256](#)
- Cooling system [327](#)
- Cornering light [163](#)
- Corrosion on brake discs [283](#)
- Cosmetic mirror [264](#)
- Cross traffic warning [193](#)
- Cruise Control, Cruise Control, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Cruise Control, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Cup holder, front [271](#)
- Cup holder, rear [271](#)
- Current driving condition [156](#)
- Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- D**
- Damage, tires [305](#)
- Dashboard [36](#)
- Dashboard, see Instrument cluster [138](#)
- Dashcam, see BMW Drive Recorder [195](#)
- Data memory [10](#)
- Data protection, settings [66](#)
- Data, see Deleting personal data [66](#)
- Data, technical [348](#)
- Date [150](#)
- Daytime driving lights [163](#)
- Daytime running lights [163](#)
- DC charging cable [292](#)
- Deceleration and recuperative braking [127](#)
- Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield [257](#)
- Defrosting, windshield [257](#)
- Deleting personal data [66](#)
- Departure schedule, see Stationary climate control [259](#)
- Departure time, pre-conditioning [260](#)
- Destination input [6](#)
- Device list [72](#)
- Diagnosis connection [330](#)
- Digital Key [93](#)
- Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key [93](#)
- Dimensions [348](#)
- Dimmable exterior mirrors [112](#)
- Dimmable interior mirror [112](#)
- Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts [50](#)
- Direction indicator, see Turn signals [133](#)
- Display charge state, high-voltage battery [148](#)
- Display charging process, see Charging screen [141](#)
- Display, current driving condition [156](#)
- Display, iDrive [49](#)
- Display information on Automatic Parking Assistant, see Assisted View [140](#)
- Display information on Driver Assistance, see Assisted View [140](#)
- Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display [157](#)
- Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [166](#)
- Display panel, see Instrument cluster [138](#)
- Displays [138](#)
- Displays and symbols [7](#)
- Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle [154](#)
- Display speed limit, see Speed Limit Info [152](#)
- Disposal, vehicle battery [333](#)
- Distance control, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Distance to vehicle driving ahead, distance control, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Distance warning, see Park Distance Control [234](#)

- Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights [162](#)
- Door opening angle [232](#)
- Drive-off assistant, see Dynamic Stability Control [201](#)
- Drive-off monitoring [237](#)
- Drive-off support [203](#)
- Drive power reduced, see Heavily discharged high-voltage battery [151](#)
- Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera [199](#)
- Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems [225](#)
- Driver assistance systems [205](#)
- Driver Attention Camera [199](#)
- Drive readiness, see Operating condition of the vehicle [45](#)
- Drive-ready state in detail [123](#)
- Drive-ready state, switching off [123](#)
- Drive-ready state, switching on [123](#)
- Driver Fatigue Alert, see Driver Attention Camera [199](#)
- Driver profiles [67](#)
- Driver profiles, welcome screen [67](#)
- Driving [121](#)
- Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems [173](#)
- Driving comfort [249](#)
- Driving condition, display [156](#)
- Driving Dynamics Control, see My Modes [129](#)
- Driving dynamics, setting [202](#)
- Driving in detail [127](#)
- Driving instructions, breaking in [280](#)
- Driving mode Efficient Mode, see Driving tips [287](#)
- Driving notes, general [281](#)
- Driving off, see Drive-off support [203](#)
- Driving on bad roads [280](#)
- Driving, see Drive-ready state in detail [123](#)
- Driving stability control systems [201](#)
- Driving, Start/Stop button [123](#)
- Driving through water [282](#)
- Driving tips [281](#)
- DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control [201](#)
- DTC, see Setting for increased driving dynamics [202](#)
- Dynamic Stability Control [201](#)
- Dynamic Traction Control, see Setting for increased driving dynamics [202](#)

E

- eDRIVE, electric driving, see BMW eDRIVE [121](#)
- Efficient4x4, see xDrive [203](#)
- Efficient driving mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- Efficient Mode, see Driving tips [287](#)
- Efficient Mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- Electric driving [127](#)
- Electric driving, see BMW eDRIVE [121](#)
- Electric motor sound [251](#)
- Electric range [150](#)
- E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake [198](#)
- Emergency call [337](#)
- Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance [336](#)
- Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [335](#)
- Emergency unlocking, tailgate [91](#)
- Emergency unlocking, transmission lock [126](#)
- Energy recovery, CHARGE [122](#)
- Engine compartment, see Hood [326](#)
- Engine coolant [327](#)
- Engine idling when driving, see Coasting [286](#)
- Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection [121](#)
- Engine start, see Jump-starting [338](#)
- Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster [153](#)
- Entry comparison [50](#)
- Equipment, interior [262](#)
- Error indicators, see Check Control [142](#)
- ESP Electronic Stability Program, see Dynamic Stability Control [201](#)

Evasion Assistant, see Forward Collision Mitigation 174
Exchange, wheels and tires 306
Exhaustion warner 198
Exit warning 183
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 162
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Exterior mirrors 111
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 111
External start, see Jump-starting 338
Eyelet for towing 340
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 274

F

Factory settings, see reset vehicle data 67
Failure message, see Check Control 142
Fan, see Air flow 257
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 107
Fatigue alert 198
Fault indicators, see Check Control 142
Filter, see Interior filter 259
Fine wood parts, care 345
First-aid kit 335
Flat tire, changing wheels 320
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 319
Flat tire message, FTM 320
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 316
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 319
Flat tire, repairing 308
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 313
Flat tire warning light, FTM 320
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 316
Flexible Fast Charger 292
Flooding, driving through 282
Floor carpet, care 346
Floor mats, care 346
Fold-away position, wiper 137
Foot brake 282
Forward Collision Mitigation 174
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Warning 174
For Your Own Safety 8
Front airbags 169

Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Front passenger airbags 172
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 172
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 172
Front seats 105
Fuses 333

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 262
Gear lever position B, Brake 125
Gear position B, Brake 125
General driving notes 281
Gesture Control 59
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 59
Glare shield, see Sun visor 264
Glass sunroof 103
Global Positioning System, navigation 6
Glove compartment 270
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 349
Guest profile, see BMW ID 67

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 130
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 263
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning system 335
Head airbag 170
Headlight control, automatic 160
Headlight flasher 134
Headlight glass 332
Headlights, care 343
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Head restraints and seats 105
Head restraints, front 109
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up Display 157
Head-up Display, care 346
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 113

- Heated steering wheel [113](#)
Heavy cargo, stowing [274](#)
Height, vehicle [348](#)
High-beam Assistant [164](#)
High beams [134](#)
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant [164](#)
High-voltage battery, alarm signal [15](#)
High-voltage battery, charge state indicator [148](#)
High-voltage battery, heated [127](#)
High-voltage battery, heavily discharged [127](#)
High-voltage battery, long stationary periods [299](#)
High-voltage battery, service life [299](#)
High-voltage system, automatic deactivation [16](#)
High-voltage system, contact with water [15](#)
High-voltage system, safety [15](#)
High-voltage system, work [15](#)
Hills [282](#)
Holder for beverages, front [271](#)
Holder for beverages, rear [271](#)
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control [262](#)
Homepage, see Internet [6](#)
Hood [326](#)
Horn [36](#)
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode [96](#)
Hour, see Time [150](#)
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass [332](#)
- I**
- iBrake - PostCrash [198](#)
Ice, see Outside temperature [150](#)
Ice warning, see Outside temperature [150](#)
Iconic sounds, see Electric motor sound [251](#)
Identification marks, tires [303](#)
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [13](#)
iDrive [48](#)
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key [80](#)
Ignition key, see Vehicle key [80](#)
Increasing the range [285](#)
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbags [172](#)
Indicator light on charging socket, see Charging status display [296](#)
Indicator lights [143](#)
Individual air distribution [257](#)
Individual settings, see BMW ID [67](#)
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [266](#)
Inflation pressure, tires [301](#)
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires [319](#)
Influencing the range, see Range prediction [139](#)
Information [6](#)
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [319](#)
Input, iDrive [49](#)
Instrument cluster [138](#)
Instrument lighting [166](#)
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster [138](#)
Integral Active Steering [203](#)
Integrated key [81](#)
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle [17](#)
Integrated Universal Remote Control [262](#)
Intelligent emergency call [337](#)
Intelligent Personal Assistant [55](#)
Intended use [8](#)
Interior camera [267](#)
Interior equipment [262](#)
Interior filter [259](#)
Interior lights [166](#)
Interior lights with the vehicle locked [162](#)
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature [112](#)
Interior mirrors [112](#)
Interior motion sensor [100](#)
Internet page [6](#)
Intersection Assistant, see Adapt speed to route [223](#)
Intersection Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation [174](#)
Interval indicator, see Service notifications [151](#)
- J**
- Jacking points for the vehicle jack [323](#)
Jam protection system, windows [102](#)
Jump-starting [338](#)

K

- Kenaf, care [345](#)
- Key Card [91](#)
- Key, mechanical [81](#)
- Key, see Vehicle key [80](#)
- Knee airbag [170](#)

L

- Label on recommended tires [307](#)
- Lane change assistant [218](#)
- Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation [190](#)
- Lane departure warning [184](#)
- Lane guidance, Assisted Driving, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Lane threshold, warning [184](#)
- Language, setting [58](#)
- Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
- Laser high beams [166](#)
- Lashing eyes in the cargo area [274](#)
- LATCH child seat mountings [118](#)
- Leather care [344](#)
- LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
- LED light carpet, see Welcome light [162](#)
- Length, vehicle [348](#)
- Letters and numbers, entering [49](#)
- Level 1 charging cable, see Mode 2 charging cable [292](#)
- Level 1 charging, see Charging vehicle [290](#)
- Level 2 charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable [292](#)
- Level 3 charging cable, see DC charging cable [292](#)
- Light-alloy wheels, care [345](#)
- Light control, adaptive [163](#)
- Lighting [160](#)
- Lighting, speakers [168](#)
- Light in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [188](#)
- Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning [193](#)
- Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)

- Lights [160](#)
- Lights and bulbs [332](#)
- Light switch [160](#)
- List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [153](#)
- Live Vehicle [154](#)
- Load [274](#)
- Loading [273](#)
- Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo [274](#)
- Local time, see Time [150](#)
- Lock control elements, rear automatic climate control [253](#)
- Locking, automatic [98](#)
- Locking, see Opening and Closing [80](#)
- Locking, settings [97](#)
- Lock, lug bolts [322](#)
- Long stationary periods, high-voltage battery [299](#)
- Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant [164](#)
- Low beams, operation [161](#)
- Lower back support, see Lumbar support [106](#)
- Lug bolt lock [322](#)
- Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack [283](#)
- Lumbar massage, see Seat massage [107](#)
- Lumbar support [106](#)

M

- Maintenance [329](#)
- Maintenance recommendations [329](#)
- Maintenance recommendations, see Condition Based Service CBS [329](#)
- Maintenance, see Service notifications [151](#)
- Maintenance system, BMW [329](#)
- Make-up mirror [264](#)
- Malfunction, vehicle key [83](#)
- Managing devices [72](#)
- Maneuver Assistant [244](#)
- Manual brake, see Parking brake [130](#)
- Manual control, air distribution [257](#)
- Manual control, air flow [257](#)
- Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Matt paint, care [344](#)
- Maximum cooling [256](#)

Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info [152](#)
Maximum speed, winter tires [308](#)
Media of the Owner's Manual [17](#)
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit [335](#)
Memory function [113](#)
Menus, operating, iDrive [48](#)
Messages, see Check Control [142](#)
Meters, see Instrument cluster [138](#)
Minimum tread depth, tires [305](#)
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle [281](#)
Mobile devices, managing [72](#)
Mobile phone, connecting [71](#)
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance [336](#)
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [335](#)
Mobility System, see Tire repair set [308](#)
Mode 2 charging cable [292](#)
Mode 2 charging, see Charging vehicle [290](#)
Mode 3 charging cable [292](#)
Mode 4 charging cable, see DC charging cable [292](#)
MODE button, see Speed control systems [205](#)
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)
Monitoring of the high-voltage battery [15](#)
Monitor, see Control Display [51](#)
Mounting of child restraint systems [117](#)
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Multifunction hook [274](#)
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [36](#)
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
My Modes [129](#)

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front [109](#)

Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear [109](#)
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care [345](#)
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [340](#)

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis [330](#)
OBD, see OBD Onboard Diagnosis [330](#)
Obstacle marking, rearview camera [228](#)
Odometer, see Trip data [155](#)
OFF display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive readiness [149](#)
Old battery [333](#)
Onboard literature, printed [17](#)
Onboard vehicle tool kit [331](#)
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance [336](#)
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance [335](#)
Opening and closing [80](#)
Opening with the Key Card [91](#)
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key [93](#)
Operating concept, iDrive [48](#)
Operating condition of the vehicle [45](#)
Operation via voice [55](#)
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment [7](#)
Outside air, see Automatic Recirculating Air Control [256](#)
Outside temperature [150](#)
Owner's Manual, printed [17](#)
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [57](#)

P

Paint, car care [344](#)
Pair device [71](#)
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections [71](#)
Panic alarm, see Panic mode [99](#)
Panic mode [99](#)
Panorama View [232](#)
Panorama View, see Panorama View [232](#)
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof [103](#)
Parallel parking assistant [238](#)

- Park Distance Control [234](#)
- Parked car ventilation, see Stationary climate control [259](#)
- Parking assistance, see Park Distance Control [234](#)
- Parking assistance systems [225](#)
- Parking assistant [238](#)
- Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems [225](#)
- Parking Assistant Professional, see Parking assistance systems [225](#)
- Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems [225](#)
- Parking brake [130](#)
- Parking brake function, Active Park Distance Control [236](#)
- Parking lights [161](#)
- Parking Maneuver Assistant, see Maneuver Assistant [244](#)
- Parking view, gesture control [60](#)
- Parking with Automatic Hold [132](#)
- Parts and accessories [9](#)
- Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor [112](#)
- Pathway lighting [162](#)
- Pathway lighting, switching on [163](#)
- Pathway lines, rearview camera [228](#)
- Payload, technical data [349](#)
- PDC, see Park Distance Control [234](#)
- Pedestrian protection, acoustic [121](#)
- Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation [174](#)
- Performance Control [250](#)
- Performance display, see Sport displays [157](#)
- Personal Assistant [55](#)
- Personal data, deleting [66](#)
- Personal driving mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- Personal eSIM [74](#)
- Personal hotspot [76](#)
- Personal Mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- Personal profile, see BMW ID [67](#)
- Personal settings [66](#)
- Phone, connecting [71](#)
- Physical units, see Setting units of measurement [150](#)
- Plastic parts, care [345](#)
- Pop-ups, control display [50](#)
- Possible gestures, gesture control [60](#)
- PostCrash - iBrake [198](#)
- Power Display, instrument cluster [148](#)
- Power failure [333](#)
- Power gauge [157](#)
- Power Meter, see Power Display [148](#)
- Power windows [101](#)
- Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor [313](#)
- Pressure, tires [301](#)
- Printed onboard literature [17](#)
- Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system [102](#)

Q

- Quick charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable [292](#)

R

- Racing track [284](#)
- Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle [41](#)
- Radiator fluid [327](#)
- Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Rain sensor [135](#)
- Range [150](#)
- Range prediction [139](#)
- READY display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive readiness [149](#)
- Rear automatic climate control [252](#)
- Rear automatic climate control, lock control elements [253](#)
- Rear axle steering, see Integral Active Steering [203](#)
- Rear-end collision preparation [192](#)
- Rear-end collision warning, see Rear-end collision preparation [192](#)
- Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
- Rear seat backrests, folding down [276](#)
- Rearview camera [230](#)
- Rear-view mirrors, exterior [111](#)
- Rear-view mirrors, interior [112](#)
- Rear window defroster [258](#)

Rear window wiper, operation [136](#)
Recirculated-air mode [256](#)
Recommended tire brands [307](#)
Recuperative braking and deceleration [127](#)
Recuperative braking, see Energy recovery [122](#)
Reduced drive power, see Heavily discharged high-voltage battery [151](#)
Remaining range, see Range [150](#)
Remote 3D View [233](#)
Remote control, see Vehicle key [80](#)
Remote control, universal [262](#)
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Remote Software Upgrade [62](#)
Renewal, wheels and tires [306](#)
Replacement, wheels and tires [306](#)
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
Replacing parts [331](#)
Replacing the battery, vehicle key [81](#)
Reporting safety malfunctions [14](#)
Reserve warning, see Range [150](#)
Reset settings, vehicle [67](#)
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor [315](#)
Reset, vehicle data [67](#)
Reset, vehicle settings [67](#)
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key [93](#)
Retreaded tires [307](#)
Reversing Assistant [247](#)
Risk of collision when exiting [183](#)
Roadside parking lights [162](#)
Rolling code hand-held transmitter [263](#)
Roofliner [39](#)
Roof-mounted luggage rack [283](#)
Rope for tow-starting/towing [340](#)
Route and Intersection Assistant, see Adapt speed to route [223](#)
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Rubber components, care [345](#)

S

Safe braking [282](#)
Safe Exit, see Exit warning [183](#)
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key [93](#)
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat [108](#)
Safety belts [107](#)
Safety belts, care [346](#)
Safety belts, doors, and windows [120](#)
Safety of the high-voltage system [15](#)
Safety package, see Active Protection [197](#)
Safety switch, windows [103](#)
Safety systems, see Airbags [169](#)
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems [173](#)
Screen, see Control Display [51](#)
Sealing compound, see Tire repair set [308](#)
Search for charging stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Seat and armrest heating [114](#)
Seat heating [114](#)
Seating position for children [116](#)
Seat massage [107](#)
Seats and head restraints [105](#)
Seats, front [105](#)
Securing, cargo [274](#)
Selection list on the instrument cluster [153](#)
Selector lever position [124](#)
Self-leveling suspension, see Two-axle ride level control [249](#)
Semi-automatic camera perspective [230](#)
Sensors, care [346](#)
Sensors of the vehicle [41](#)
Service and warranty [9](#)
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance [336](#)
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance [335](#)
Service life of high-voltage battery [299](#)
Service notifications [151](#)
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service CBS [329](#)

- Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Servotronic [203](#)
- SET button, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Set clock [150](#)
- Set day, see Date [150](#)
- Set system language, see Language [58](#)
- Set time, see Time [150](#)
- Setting, Control Display [52](#)
- Setting driving dynamics, see My Modes [129](#)
- Settings, locking/unlocking [97](#)
- Settings, seats and head restraints [105](#)
- Setting units of measurement [150](#)
- Shortcuts, iDrive [50](#)
- Side airbag [169](#)
- Side collision mitigation [190](#)
- Side protection, Park Distance Control side, see side protection [230](#)
- Side view [231](#)
- Signaling, horn [36](#)
- Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle [98](#)
- Sitting safely [105](#)
- Sleep mode, see Operating condition of the vehicle [45](#)
- Slipperiness, see Outside temperature [150](#)
- Slippery road, see Outside temperature [150](#)
- Smallest turning circle, vehicle [348](#)
- Smartphone, connecting [71](#)
- Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation [77](#)
- Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation [76](#)
- Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Smartphone, using via voice control [58](#)
- SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Snapshot camera, see Interior camera [267](#)
- Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis [330](#)
- Sockets, electrical devices [264](#)
- Soft-close automatic, doors [96](#)
- Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade [62](#)
- Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [62](#)
- SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call [337](#)
- Sound of drivetrain [251](#)
- Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Speaker lighting [168](#)
- Speech recognition [55](#)
- Speed control systems [205](#)
- Speed Limit Assist [221](#)
- Speed Limit Assistant [221](#)
- Speed Limit Device, speed limiter, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info [152](#)
- Speed limiter, manual, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Speed Limit Info [152](#)
- Speed warning [205](#)
- Sport displays [157](#)
- Sport driving mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- Sport Mode, see My Modes [129](#)
- SPORT PLUS setting, see Setting for increased driving dynamics [202](#)
- Stability control systems [201](#)
- Standard charging cable [292](#)
- Standard charging, see Charging vehicle [290](#)
- Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment [7](#)
- Standby, see Operating condition of the vehicle [45](#)
- Start/Stop button [123](#)
- Starting the engine with the Key Card [91](#)
- Stationary climate control [259](#)
- Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Status control display, tires [315](#)
- Status information, iDrive [49](#)
- Status of Owner's Manual [8](#)
- Status, vehicle [157](#)
- Steering column adjustment [112](#)
- Steering, see Integral Active Steering [203](#)
- Steering support, see Servotronic [203](#)
- Steering wheel, adjusting [112](#)
- Steering wheel, buttons [36](#)
- Steering wheel heating [113](#)
- Storage, charging cable [293](#)
- Storage compartments [270](#)

- Storage, tires [308](#)
- Store Mirror position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Store seat position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Store steering wheel position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Stowing, cargo [274](#)
- Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area [274](#)
- Suitable devices [72](#)
- Suitable mobile phones [72](#)
- Summer tires, tread [305](#)
- Sun visor [264](#)
- Sun visor, sliding [264](#)
- Supplementary Owner's Manuals [17](#)
- Surface heating, see Seat and armrest heating [114](#)
- Switches, see Dashboard [36](#)
- Switching off, drive-ready state [123](#)
- Switching on, drive-ready state [123](#)
- Symbols and displays [7](#)
- SYNC program, automatic climate control [257](#)
- ## T
- Tailgate, emergency unlocking [91](#)
- Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [332](#)
- Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)
- Technical data [348](#)
- Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster [153](#)
- Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Temperature, automatic climate control [255](#)
- Temperature display, see outside temperature [150](#)
- Tensioning straps, cargo area [275](#)
- Theft alarm system, see Alarm system [99](#)
- Through-loading system [276](#)
- Tilt alarm sensor [100](#)
- Tilt, backrest [106](#)
- Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor [112](#)
- Time [150](#)
- Time of day, see Time [150](#)
- Time setting, automatic [150](#)
- Time zone [150](#)
- Tire brands, recommended [307](#)
- Tire chains [312](#)
- Tire change [306](#)
- Tire damage [305](#)
- Tire identification marks [303](#)
- Tire inflation pressure [301](#)
- Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM [319](#)
- Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM [319](#)
- Tire marking [303](#)
- Tire pressure [301](#)
- Tire Pressure Monitor [313](#)
- Tire Pressure Monitor, reset [315](#)
- Tire repair set [308](#)
- Tires and wheels [301](#)
- Tire sealant, see Tire repair set [308](#)
- Tire settings [314](#)
- Tire tread [305](#)
- Title, gesture control [60](#)
- Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)
- Tools [331](#)
- Torque display, see Sport displays [157](#)
- Touchpad, Controller [53](#)
- Tow bar [340](#)
- Tow fitting [340](#)
- Towing [339](#)
- Tow rope [340](#)
- TPM Flat Tire Monitor [319](#)
- Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Traffic Jam Assistant, Assisted Driving Plus, see Speed control systems [205](#)
- Transmission lock, electronic unlocking [126](#)
- Transporting children safely [116](#)
- Travel & Comfort System [265](#)
- Tread, tires [305](#)
- Trip computer, see Trip data [155](#)
- Trip data [155](#)
- Triple turn signal activation [134](#)
- Trip odometer, see Trip data [155](#)
- Trunk emergency unlocking [91](#)
- Trunk, see Cargo area [273](#)
- Turning circle lines, rearview camera [228](#)
- Turning circle, vehicle [348](#)

Turn signal, indicator light [146](#)
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see [Lights and bulbs](#) [332](#)
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher [133](#)
Turn Warning, see [Forward Collision Mitigation](#) [174](#)
Two-axle ride level control [249](#)

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see [Sensors of the vehicle](#) [41](#)
Unintentional alarm, avoiding [100](#)
Units, see [Setting units of measurement](#) [150](#)
Universal remote control [262](#)
Unlocking, automatic [98](#)
Unlocking, see [Opening and Closing](#) [80](#)
Unlocking, settings [97](#)
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips [280](#)
Unwarranted alarm, see [Avoiding unintentional alarms](#) [100](#)
Updates made after the editorial deadline [8](#)
Upgrade, see [Remote Software Upgrade](#) [62](#)
Upholstery material care [344](#)
Upper retaining strap, top tether [119](#)
USB connection [78](#)
USB port, position in vehicle [265](#)
Used battery, disposing of [333](#)
Use, intended [8](#)

V

Valet parking mode [96](#)
Vanity mirror [264](#)
Variable steering, see [Integral Active Steering](#) [203](#)
Vehicle battery [332](#)
Vehicle breakdown, see [Breakdown assistance](#) [335](#)
Vehicle, breaking in [280](#)
Vehicle care [344](#)
Vehicle care products [344](#)
Vehicle data, reset [67](#)
Vehicle equipment [7](#)
Vehicle identification number [13](#)
Vehicle key [80](#)

Vehicle key, additional [80](#)
Vehicle key, integrated key [81](#)
Vehicle key, loss [80](#)
Vehicle key, malfunction [83](#)
Vehicle key, replacing the battery [81](#)
Vehicle paint, care [344](#)
Vehicle status [157](#)
Vehicle washing [342](#)
Ventilation [258](#)
Venting, see [Stationary climate control](#) [259](#)
Venting, see [Ventilation](#) [258](#)
Vent, see [Ventilation](#) [258](#)
Version Software, see [Remote Software Upgrade](#) [62](#)
Video recording, see [BMW Drive Recorder](#) [195](#)
Video, see [Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication](#) [6](#)
VIN, see [Vehicle identification number](#) [13](#)
Voice command response [55](#)
Voice control [55](#)
Voice control, gesture control [60](#)
Voice control, see [BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant](#) [55](#)
Voice control system [55](#)
Volume, gesture control [60](#)

W

Wake word [56](#)
Warning against cross traffic [193](#)
Warning function for oncoming traffic, see [Forward Collision Mitigation](#) [174](#)
Warning function, rear-end collision [192](#)
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see [Active Blind Spot Detection](#) [188](#)
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see [Cross traffic warning](#) [193](#)
Warning lights [143](#)
Warning messages, see [Check Control](#) [142](#)
Warning systems in case of risk of collision [173](#)
Warning triangle [335](#)
Warning when exiting [183](#)
Warning when opening the doors, see [Exit warning](#) [183](#)
Warranty [8](#)
Warranty Booklet [8](#)

Washer fluid [327](#)
Washer nozzles, windshield [136](#)
Washer system [134](#)
Washing the vehicle [342](#)
Washing, vehicle [342](#)
Water, high-voltage system [15](#)
Water on roads [282](#)
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle [283](#)
Website, see Internet [6](#)
Weights [349](#)
Welcome lights [162](#)
Welcome screen, driver profiles [67](#)
Wheel base, vehicle [348](#)
Wheels and tires [301](#)
Wheels and tires, exchange [306](#)
Widgets, iDrive [49](#)
Width, vehicle [348](#)
Window, defrosting [257](#)
Windows, powered [101](#)
Windshield, climate comfort [281](#)
Windshield, defrosting [257](#)
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid [327](#)
Windshield washer nozzles [136](#)
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system [134](#)
Winter tires [307](#)
Winter tires, tread [305](#)
Wiper blades, replacing [331](#)
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid [327](#)
Wiper, fold-away position [137](#)
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system [134](#)
Wiper system [134](#)
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray [266](#)
Wireless charging tray for smartphones [266](#)
WLAN connection, see WiFi connection [74](#)
Wood parts, care [345](#)
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [50](#)
Work, high-voltage system [15](#)
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit [331](#)

X

xDrive [203](#)



01405A48D60 ue

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning



WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.



The Ultimate
Driving Machine®



BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.



01405A48D60ue

